2016 **FOCUS** Owner's Manual

owner.ford.com

ford.ca

July 2016
Fourth Printing
Owner's Manual
Focus
Litho in U.S.A.

GM5J 19A321 AA



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2016

All rights reserved.

Part Number: GM5J-19A321-AA 201510 20160512085521

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual....7
Symbols Glossary....7
Data Recording....9
California Proposition 65....11
Perchlorate....11
Ford Credit....11
Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Special Notices....12
Mobile Communications Equipment....13
Export Unique Options....13

Environment

Protecting the Environment....15

Child Safety

General Information....16
Installing Child Restraints....17
Booster Seats....24
Child Restraint Positioning....26
Child Safety Locks....27

Seatbelts

Principle of Operation....29
Fastening the Seatbelts....30
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....32
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....33
Seatbelt Reminder....33
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance....35

Personal Safety System™

Personal Safety System™....36

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation....37
Driver and Passenger Airbags....38
Front Passenger Sensing System....39
Side Airbags....41
Driver Knee Airbag....42
Safety Canopy™....43
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator....44
Airbag Disposal....45

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies....46
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Integrated Key Transmitter....46
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry with Remote Start....48
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry....51
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....53

MyKey™

Principle of Operation....54
Creating a MyKey....55
Clearing All MyKeys....56
Checking MyKey System Status....57
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....57
MyKey Troubleshooting....57

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking....59
Manual Liftgate....63
Keyless Entry....64
Interior Luggage Compartment Release - 4-Door....65

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System....67
Anti-Theft Alarm....69

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Table of Contents

Steering Wheel
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....70
Audio Control....70
Voice Control....71
Cruise Control....71
Information Display Control....71
Heated Steering Wheel....72

Wipers and Washers
Windshield Wipers....73
Windshield Washers....73
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....74

Lighting
General Information....75
Lighting Control....75
Autolamps....76
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....77
Headlamp Exit Delay....77
Daytime Running Lamps....77
Automatic High Beam Control....78
Front Fog Lamps....79
Direction Indicators....79
Interior Lamps....79
Ambient Lighting....80

Windows and Mirrors
Power Windows....82
Exterior Mirrors....83
Interior Mirror....85
Sun Visors....85
Moonroof....85

Instrument Cluster
Gauges....87
Warning Lamps and Indicators....88
Audible Warnings and Indicators....91

Information Displays
General Information....92
Trip Computer....95
Information Messages....96

Climate Control
Manual Climate Control....104
Automatic Climate Control....105
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....107
Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
Cabin Air Filter....109
Remote Start....110

Seats
Sitting in the Correct Position....111
Head Restraints....111
Manual Seats....113
Power Seats....113
Rear Seats....114
Heated Seats....116

Auxiliary Power Points
Auxiliary Power Points....117

Storage Compartments
Center Console....118
Overhead Console....118

Starting and Stopping the Engine
General Information....119
Ignition Switch....119
Keyless Starting....119
Starting a Gasoline Engine....122
Engine Block Heater....125

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Table of Contents

Unique Driving Characteristics

Auto-Start-Stop....127

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions....129
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....130
Fuel Quality - E85....130
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....131
Running Out of Fuel....131
Refueling....133
Fuel Consumption....134
Emission Control System....135

Transmission

Manual Transmission - 5-Speed Manual Transmission (MTX-75)....138
Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual Transmission (MMT6)....139
Automatic Transmission....140

Brakes

General Information....145
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....145
Parking Brake....146
Hill Start Assist....146

Traction Control

Principle of Operation....148
Using Traction Control....148

Stability Control

Principle of Operation....149
Using Stability Control....150

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation....151
Rear Parking Aid....151
Front Parking Aid....152
Active Park Assist....153
Rear View Camera....157

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation....160
Using Cruise Control....160

Driving Aids

Driver Alert....161
Lane Keeping System....162
Blind Spot Information System....166
Cross Traffic Alert....169
Eco Mode....172
Steering....173

Load Carrying

Rear Under Floor Storage....175
Luggage Covers....175
Load Limit....175

Towing

Towing a Trailer....183
Transporting the Vehicle....183
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission....183
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission....184
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L, Automatic Transmission....184

Driving Hints

Breaking-In....187
Economical Driving....187
Cold Weather Precautions....187
Driving Through Water....187
Floor Mats....188

Roadside Emergencies

Roadside Assistance....190

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Hazard Warning Flashers....191
Fuel Shutoff....191
Jump Starting the Vehicle....192
Post-Crash Alert System....194

Customer Assistance

Getting the Services You Need....195
In California (U.S. Only)....196
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only)....197
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....198
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....198
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....199
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....200
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....200

Fuses

Fuse Specification Chart....202
Changing a Fuse....211

Maintenance

General Information....213
Opening and Closing the Hood....213
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™....215
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L....216
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™....217
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L....217
Engine Oil Check....217
Engine Coolant Check....218
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....219
Brake Fluid Check....220
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission....220
Washer Fluid Check....220
Fuel Filter....221
Changing the 12V Battery....221
Checking the Wiper Blades....222
Changing the Wiper Blades....222
Adjusting the Headlamps....224
Removing a Headlamp....225
Changing a Bulb....226
Bulb Specification Chart....231
Changing the Engine Air Filter....233
Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™....234
Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L....234

Vehicle Care

General Information....235
Cleaning Products....235
Cleaning the Exterior....236
Waxing....237
Cleaning the Engine....237
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades....238
Cleaning the Interior....238
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens....239
Cleaning Leather Seats....239
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....240
Cleaning the Wheels....240
Vehicle Storage....240

Wheels and Tires

Tire Care....243
Using Snow Chains....258
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....259
Changing a Road Wheel....262
Driving at High Speed....265
Lug Nuts....266

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....267
Engine Specifications - 2.0L.....268
Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....269
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L.....270
Vehicle Identification Number.....271
Vehicle Certification Label.....272
Transmission Code Designation.....272
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....273
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L.....276

Audio System

General Information.....281
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC.....282
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Satellite Radio.....285
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System.....288
Digital Radio.....291
Satellite Radio.....294
USB Port.....296
Media Hub.....296

SYNC™

General Information.....297
Using Voice Recognition.....299
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....301
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....313
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....318
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....327

Accessories

Accessories.....335

Extended Service Plan (ESP)

Extended Service Plan (ESP).....337

Scheduled Maintenance

General Maintenance Information.....339
Normal Scheduled Maintenance.....342
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance.....345
Scheduled Maintenance Record.....347

Appendices

End User License Agreement.....357
Type Approvals.....381

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

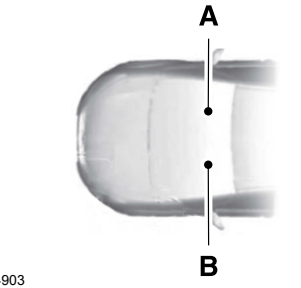
Note: *This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Note: *Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.*

Note: *Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.*

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.


Air conditioning system


Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system


Avoid smoking, flames or sparks


Battery


Battery acid


Brake fluid - non petroleum based


Brake system

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


Cabin air filter


Check fuel cap


Child safety door lock or unlock


Child seat lower anchor


Child seat tether anchor


Cruise control


Do not open when hot


Engine air filter


Engine coolant


Engine coolant temperature


Engine oil


Explosive gas


Fan warning


Fasten seatbelt


Flammable


Front airbag


Front fog lamps


Fuel pump reset


Fuse compartment


Hazard warning flashers


Heated rear window


Heated windshield


Interior luggage compartment release


Jack


Keep out of reach of children


Lighting control


Low tire pressure warning


Maintain correct fluid level


Note operating instructions


Panic alarm

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


Parking aid


Parking brake


Power steering fluid


Power windows front/rear


Power window lockout


Requires registered technician


Safety alert


See Owner's Manual


See Service Manual


Service engine soon


Side airbag


Shield the eyes


Stability control


Windshield wash and wipe

DATA RECORDING

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada in Canada), and service and repair facilities may access or share among them vehicle diagnostic information received through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle. Additionally, Ford Motor Company (Ford of Canada, in Canada) may, where permitted by law, use vehicle diagnostic information for vehicle improvement or with other information we may have about you, (e.g., your contact information), to offer you products or services that may interest you. Data may be provided to our service providers such as part suppliers that may help diagnose malfunctions, and who are similarly obligated to protect data. We retain this data only as long as necessary to perform these functions or to comply with law. We may provide information where required in response to official requests to law enforcement or other government authorities or third parties acting with lawful authority or court order, and such information may be used in legal proceedings. For U.S. only (if equipped), if you choose to use connected apps and services, such as SYNC Vehicle Health Report or MyFord Mobile App, you consent that certain diagnostic information may also be accessed electronically by Ford Motor Company and Ford authorized service facilities, and that the diagnostic information may be used to provide services to you, personalizing your

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

experience, troubleshoot, and to improve products and services and offer you products and services that may interest you, where permitted by law. For Canada only, for more information, please review the Ford of Canada privacy policy at www.ford.ca, including our U.S. data storage and use of service providers in other jurisdictions who may be subject to legal requirements in Canada, the United States and other countries applicable to them, for example, lawful requirements to disclose personal information to governmental authorities in those countries. See **SYNC™** (page 297).

Event Data Recording

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal; and**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling; and**
- **Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.**

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: ***Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded (see limitations regarding 911 Assist and Traffic, directions and Information privacy below). However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.***

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: ***Including to the extent that any law pertaining to Event Data Recorders applies to SYNC or its features, please note the following: Once 911 Assist (if equipped) is enabled (set ON), 911 Assist may, through any paired and connected cell phone, disclose to emergency services that the vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or, in certain vehicles, the activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of being used to electronically or verbally provide to 911 operators the vehicle location (such as latitude and longitude), and/or other details about the vehicle or crash or personal information about the occupants to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the 911 Assist feature.*** *See* ***SYNC™*** *(page 297).*

Additionally, when you connect to Traffic, Directions and Information (if equipped, U.S. only), the service uses GPS technology and advanced vehicle sensors to collect the vehicle's current location, travel direction, and speed ("vehicle travel information"), only to help provide you with the directions, traffic reports, or business searches that you request. If you do not want Ford or its vendors to receive this information, do not activate the service. For more information, see Traffic, Directions and Information, Terms and Conditions. See **SYNC™** (page 297).

CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65

WARNINGS

Some constituents of engine exhaust, certain vehicle components, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling.

PERCHLORATE

Certain components in your vehicle such as airbag modules, seatbelt pretensioners and remote control batteries may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal.

For more information visit:

Web Address
www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazard-ouswaste/perchlorate

FORD CREDIT

US Only

Ford Credit offers a full range of financing and lease plans to help you acquire your vehicle. If you have financed or leased your vehicle through Ford Credit, thank you for your business.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

We offer a number of convenient ways for you to contact us and help to manage your account.

Call 1-800-727-7000.

For more information about Ford Credit and access to the Account Manager, go to www.fordcredit.com.

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the Warranty Manual that is provided to you along with your Owner's Manual.

Special Instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

WARNINGS

You risk death or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Never place front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats in front of an active passenger airbag.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector

WARNING

Use of wireless plug-in devices in the OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) may allow unauthorized third parties to gain access to vehicle systems and data which could impair the function of various vehicle systems, including safety-related systems. The DLC should only be used by a repair facility that operates in accordance with Ford's service and repair instructions.

Your vehicle has an OBD Data Link Connector (DLC) that is used in conjunction with a diagnostic scan tool for vehicle diagnostics, repairs and reprogramming services. Installing an aftermarket device that uses the DLC during normal driving for purposes such as remote insurance company monitoring, transmission of vehicle data to other devices or entities, or altering the performance of the vehicle, may cause interference with or even damage to vehicle systems. We do not recommend or endorse the use of aftermarket plug-in devices unless approved by Ford. The vehicle Warranty will not cover damage caused by an aftermarket plug-in device.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

EXPORT UNIQUE OPTIONS

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the features and options that are described in this Owner's Manual. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features,

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This Owner's Manual is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for export. **Refer to this Owner's Manual for all other required information and warnings.**

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children.

WARNINGS

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

All children are shaped differently. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and other safety organizations, base their recommendations for child restraints on probable child height, age and weight thresholds, or on the minimum requirements of the law. We recommend that you check with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make sure that you properly install the child restraint in your vehicle and that you consult your pediatrician to make sure you have a child restraint appropriate for your child. To locate a child restraint fitting station and CPST, contact NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or go to www.nhtsa.dot.gov. In Canada, contact Transport Canada toll free at 1-800-333-0371 or go to www.tc.gc.ca to find a Child Car Seat Clinic in your area. Failure to properly restrain children in child restraints made especially for their height, age and weight, may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

WARNINGS

On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children

Child	Child size, height, weight, or age	Recommended restraint type
Infants or toddlers	Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger).	Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat).
Small children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall, are greater than age four and less than age 12, and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) and upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer).	Use a belt-positioning booster seat.
Larger children	Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (1.45 m) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer).	Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright.

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the United States and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements about the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children 12 years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position. See **Front Passenger Sensing System** (page 39).

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

Child Seats



E142594

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat) for infants, toddlers, or children weighing 40 pounds (18 kilograms) or less (generally age four or younger).

Using Lap and Shoulder Belts

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies and LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

When installing a child safety seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place the vehicle seat upon which the child seat will be installed in the upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. See Step 5. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap and shoulder belts:

Note: *Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.*



E142528

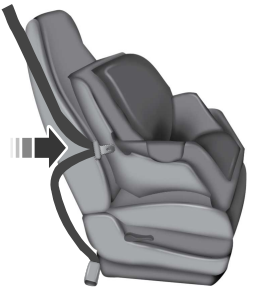
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



E142529

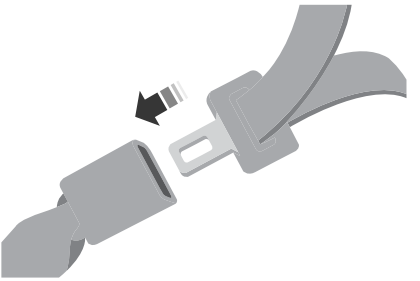
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



E142530

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



E142531

4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



E142875

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

Note: *The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats.*

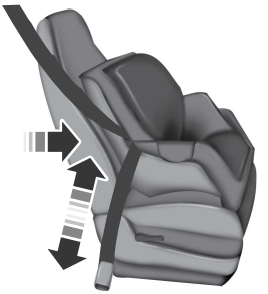
6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



E142533

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the extra weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.
9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped).


E142534

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 1 inch (2.5 centimeters) of movement for proper installation.

Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician to make certain the child restraint is properly installed. In Canada, check with your local St. John Ambulance office for referral to a Certified Passenger Seat Technician.

Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)

WARNINGS

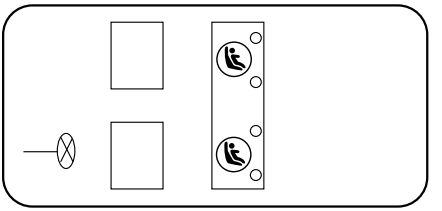
Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Depending on where you secure a child restraint, and depending on the child restraint design, you may block access to certain safety belt buckle assemblies or LATCH lower anchors, rendering those features potentially unusable. To avoid risk of injury, occupants should only use seating positions where they are able to be properly restrained.

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two lower anchors located where the seatback and seat cushion meet (called the seat bight) and one top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

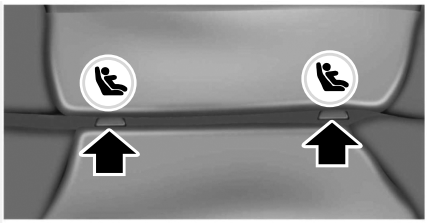
LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142535

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



E169083

The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seatback above the symbols as shown. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Use of Inboard Lower Anchors from the Outboard Seating Positions (Center Seating Use)

WARNING

The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 11 inches (28 centimeters) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 18 inches (46 centimeters) apart. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to your vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Combining Safety Belt and LATCH Lower Anchors for Attaching Child Safety Seats

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat.

Using Tether Straps



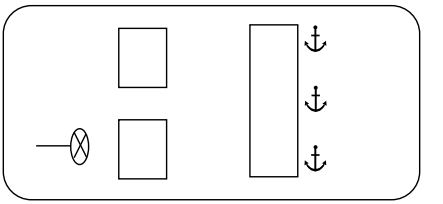
Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats.

Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in your vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

Four door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located under a cover marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).

Five door: The tether anchors in your vehicle are located on the back panel of the rear seat.



E142537

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Perform the following steps to install a child safety seat with tether anchors:

Note: *If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off your vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching your vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.*

Four Door

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating positions, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



E144274

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.
3. Open the tether anchor cover.



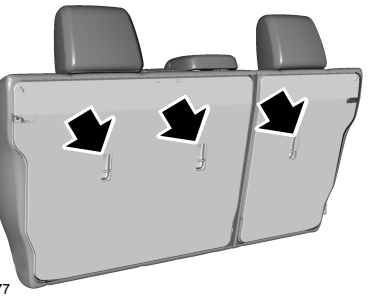
E144275

4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.
5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions. If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, we also recommend its use.

Five Door

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat. For outboard seating positions, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts. For the center seating position, route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.



E164077

2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.



E142539

3. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown. If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a crash.
4. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

If your child restraint system is equipped with a tether strap, and the child restraint manufacturer recommends its use, Ford also recommends its use.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

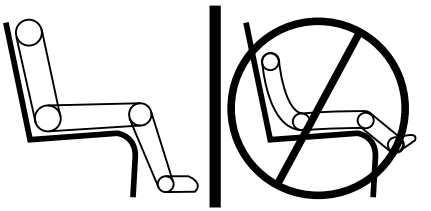
BOOSTER SEATS

WARNING

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

Use a belt-positioning booster seat for children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 pounds (18 kilograms) and 80 pounds (36 kilograms) and upward to 100 pounds (45 kilograms) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 pounds (36 kilograms).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:



E142595

- Can the child sit all the way back against their vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?
- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Always use booster seats in conjunction with your vehicle lap and shoulder belt.

Types of Booster Seats



E68924

- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap and shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E70710

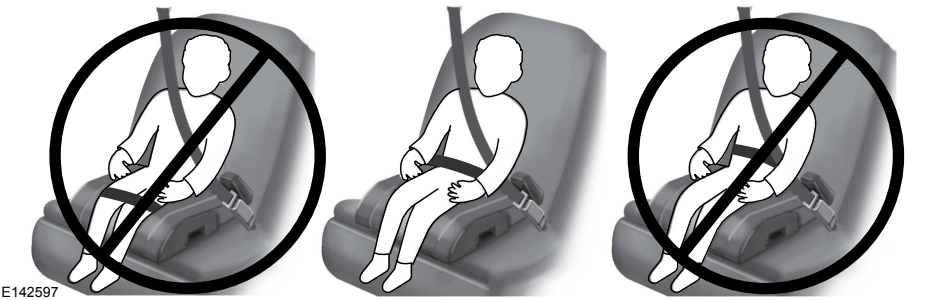
- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The following drawings compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



E142596



E142597

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat upon which it is being used, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING

WARNINGS

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by your vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

WARNINGS

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash, which may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a crash.

Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

To avoid risk of injury, do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children

Restraint Type	Combined weight of child and child seat	Use any attachment method as indicated below by X				
		LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	LATCH (lower anchors only)	Safety belt and top tether anchor	Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)	Safety belt only
Rear facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)		X			X
Rear facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)					X
Forward facing child seat	Up to 65 lb (29.5 kg)	X		X	X	
Forward facing child seat	Over 65 lb (29.5 kg)			X	X	

Note: *The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat upon which it is installed. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See* ***Seats*** *(page 111).*

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.



E112197

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The childproof locks are located on the rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Right-Hand Side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while your vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a crash.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your seatbelts could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seatbelt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific seatbelt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the seatbelt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

WARNINGS

When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Seatbelts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear seatbelts for optimum protection in an accident.

All seating positions in your vehicle have lap and shoulder seatbelts. All occupants of the vehicle should always properly wear their seatbelts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided.

The seatbelt system consists of:

- Lap and shoulder seatbelts.
- Shoulder seatbelt with automatic locking mode, (except driver seatbelt).
- Height adjuster at the front outboard seating positions.
- Seatbelt pretensioner at the front outboard seating positions.
- Belt tension sensor at the front outboard passenger seating position.



· Seatbelt warning light and chime.



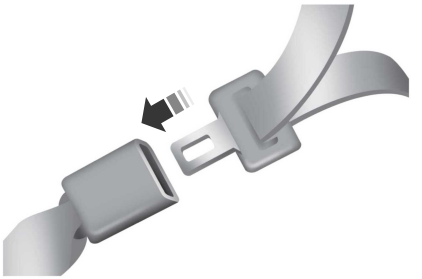
· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

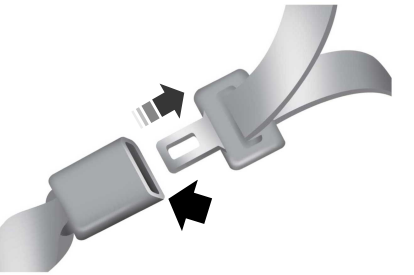
The seatbelt pretensioners at the front seating positions are designed to tighten the seatbelts when activated. In frontal and near-frontal crashes, the seatbelt pretensioners may be activated alone or, if the crash is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags. The pretensioners will activate when the Safety Canopy is deployed.

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

The front outboard and rear safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.


E142587

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

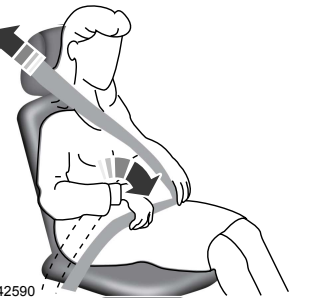

E142588

2. To unfasten, press the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy

WARNING

Always ride and drive with your seatback upright and the safety belt properly fastened. The lap portion of the safety belt should fit snug and be positioned low across the hips. The shoulder portion of the safety belt should be positioned across the chest. Pregnant women should also follow this practice. See the following figure.


E142590

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

Safety Belt Locking Modes

WARNINGS

After any vehicle crash, the safety belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.

The belt and retractor assembly must be replaced if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in crashes.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The driver safety belt has the first type of locking mode. The front outboard passenger and rear seat safety belts have both types of locking modes described as follows:

Vehicle Sensitive Mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of about 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

In addition, the retractor is designed to lock if the webbing is pulled out too quickly. If this occurs, let the belt retract slightly and pull webbing out again in a slow and controlled manner.

Automatic Locking Mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

When to Use the Automatic Locking Mode

This mode should be used any time a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. See **Child Safety** (page 16).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

How to Use the Automatic Locking Mode



E142591

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to Disengage the Automatic Locking Mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

Safety Belt Extension Assembly

WARNING

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, a safety belt extension assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is on a label located either at the end of the webbing or on the retractor behind the trim. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

WARNING

Position the safety belt height adjuster so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a crash.

Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.



E183582

To adjust the shoulder belt height:

1. Press the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT WARNING LAMP AND INDICATOR CHIME



This lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's safety belt has not been fastened when the vehicle's ignition is turned on.

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

SEATBELT REMINDER

Belt-Minder™

This feature supplements the safety belt warning function by providing additional reminders that intermittently sound a tone and illuminate the safety belt warning light when you are in the driver seat or you have a front seat passenger and a safety belt is unbuckled.

The system uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder feature for objects you place in the front passenger seat, only the front seat passengers receive warnings as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

If the Belt-Minder warnings expire (warnings for about five minutes) for one passenger (driver or front passenger), the other passenger can still cause the Belt-Minder feature to turn on.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If...	Then...
You and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts before you switch the ignition on or less than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature will not activate.
You or the front seat passenger do not buckle your safety belts before your vehicle reaches at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.
The safety belt for the driver or front passenger is unbuckled for about 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 6 mph (9.7 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes elapse after you switch the ignition on...	The Belt-Minder feature activates, the safety belt warning light illuminates and a warning tone sounds for 6 seconds every 25 seconds, repeating for about 5 minutes or until you and the front seat passenger buckle your safety belts.

Deactivating and Activating the Belt-Minder Feature

WARNING

While the system allows you to deactivate it, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle.

Note: *The driver and front passenger warnings switch on and off independently. When you perform this procedure for one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.*

Note: *If you are using MyKey™, you cannot disable the Belt-Minder. Also, if you have previously disabled the Belt-Minder, it will be re-enabled during the use of MyKey™. See* ***MyKey™*** *(page 54).*

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the programming procedure.

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set.
- The transmission is in park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) (manual transmission).
- The ignition is off.
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled.

1. Switch the ignition on. Do not start the vehicle.
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (about one minute). After Step 2, wait an additional 5 seconds before proceeding with Step 3. Once you start Step 3, you must complete the procedure within 60 seconds.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

3. For the seating position you are switching off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt three times at a moderate speed, ending in the unbuckled state. After Step 3, the safety belt warning light turns on.
4. While the safety belt warning light is on, buckle and then unbuckle the safety belt. After Step 4, the safety belt warning light flashes for confirmation.

- This will switch the feature off for that seating position if it is currently on.
- This will switch the feature on for that seating position if it is currently off.

CHILD RESTRAINT AND SEATBELT MAINTENANCE

Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seat back (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a crash. Read the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint.

Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a crash be replaced. However, if the crash was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a crash should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Properly care for safety belts. See **Vehicle Care** (page 235).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The Personal Safety System provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

The Vehicle Personal Safety System consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front seat outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Passenger airbag off and on indicator lamp.
- Front crash severity sensors.
- Restraints control module with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and backup tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensors, safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system and indicator lights.

How Does the Personal Safety System Work?

The Personal Safety System can adapt the deployment strategy of the safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the restraints control module. During a crash, the restraints control module may deploy the safety belt pretensioners, one or both stages of the dual-stage airbags based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Airbags do not inflate slowly or gently, and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is the greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.

All occupants of your vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. To reduce the risk of injury, do not touch them after inflation.

If the airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the safety belts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

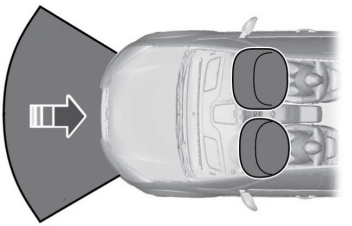
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

DRIVER AND PASSENGER AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Never place your arm or any objects over an airbag module. Placing your arm over a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries. Objects placed on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.



E151127

The driver and front passenger airbags will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.

· Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment

WARNING

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 centimeters) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Children and Airbags

WARNING

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Never place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat upon which the child seat is installed all the way back.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142846

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a crash.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. Failure to follow this could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

Sitting improperly out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not stow objects in the seatback map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off the seatback if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the passenger airbag off indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the passenger seat sensing system.

Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system which could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

This system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and safety belt to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.



E188175

The front passenger sensing system uses a passenger airbag status indicator that illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either ON (enabled) or OFF (disabled).

The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel.

Note: *The passenger airbag status indicator OFF and ON indicator lamps illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is first turned on to confirm it is functional.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag when the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected. Even with this technology, parents are **strongly** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the OFF lamp and stays lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the ON lamp and remains illuminated.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the airbag off indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator OFF lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Passenger airbag status indicator	Passenger airbag
Empty	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Child	OFF: Lit	Disabled
	ON: Unlit	
Adult	OFF: Unlit	Enabled
	ON: Lit	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it is very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seatback, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seatback.
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.
- Cargo interference with the seat.
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly, See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged or cargo is interfering with the seat, please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center. See **Getting the Services You Need** (page 195).

SIDE AIRBAGS

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

If the side airbag has deployed, the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side airbags are located on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain sideways crashes, the airbag on the side affected by the crash will be inflated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact crashes.



E152533

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags located inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front passenger sensing system.



- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

Note: *The passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty passenger seat.*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

A driver's knee airbag is located under the instrument panel. During a crash, the restraints control module may activate the driver's knee airbag based on crash severity and occupant conditions. Under certain crash and occupant conditions, the driver's knee airbag may deploy but the driver's front airbag may not activate. As with front and side airbags, it is important to be properly seated and restrained to reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



Make sure the knee airbag is operating properly. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

SAFETY CANOPY™

WARNINGS

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.

Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

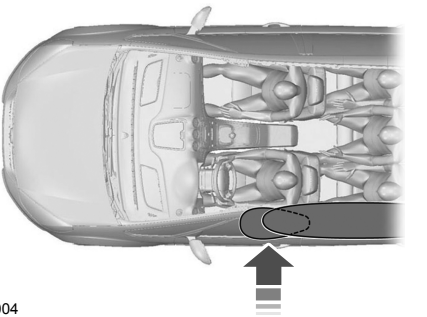
Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing curtain airbags as you could be seriously injured or killed. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

All occupants of your vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and curtain airbag is provided. Failure to properly wear your safety belt could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the curtain airbag.

If the curtain airbags have deployed, the curtain airbags will not function again. The curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer. If the curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The Safety Canopy will deploy during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



E75004

The system consists of the following:

- Safety canopy curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



· Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 44).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The Safety Canopy will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the Safety Canopy included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy).

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR

WARNING

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors which provide information to the restraints control module which deploys (activates) the front safety belt pretensioners, driver airbag, passenger airbag, knee airbag(s), seat mounted side airbags, and the Safety Canopy. Based on the type of accident (frontal impact, side impact or rollover) the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. A warning indicator light in the instrument cluster indicates the readiness of the safety system. If this warning indicator light is not functioning and there is another fault within the system, the message cluster may display an airbag failure warning. See **Information Displays** (page 92). You will hear five tones that repeat periodically until you repair the problem, the warning indicator light or both. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:



- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the light or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a crash.

The safety belt pretensioners and the airbag supplemental restraint system is designed to activate when your vehicle sustains frontal or sideways deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The fact that the safety belt pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the restraints control module determined the accident conditions (for example, crash severity, belt usage) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to activate only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the crash causes sufficient frontal deceleration.
- The safety belt pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, near-frontal, side and rollover crashes.
- The design of the side airbags is to inflate in certain side crashes. Side airbags may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.
- The knee airbag(s) may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the Safety Canopy is to inflate in certain side impact crashes and when a certain likelihood of rollover is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy may activate in other types of crashes if the vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation, or a certain likelihood of rollover.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: *Changes or modifications not expressively approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term* ***IC*** *before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.*

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). Vehicles with the remote start feature will have a greater range. One of the following could cause a decrease in operating range:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around the vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

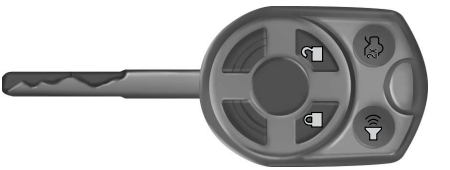
Note: *Make sure to lock your vehicle before leaving it unattended.*

Note: *If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.*

Note: *The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.*

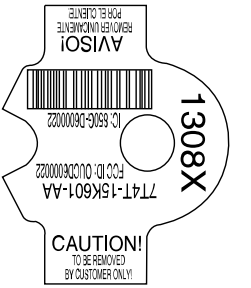
REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: INTEGRATED KEY TRANSMITTER

Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (If Equipped)



E142585

Use the key blade to start your vehicle and unlock or lock the driver door from outside your vehicle. The buttons on the key operate the remote control.



E138615

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 67).

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

Note: *When you press the unlock button, either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.*

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

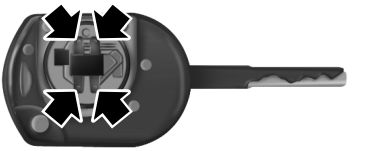


Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E138619

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the transmitter near the key ring to remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the old battery.



E138620

3. Insert the new battery. Refer to the symbols inside the transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
4. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

The horn sounds twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Sounding the Panic Alarm (If Equipped)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to silence it.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY WITH REMOTE START

Intelligent Access Key (If Equipped)



E138616

The intelligent access key operates the power locks and the remote start system. The key must be in your vehicle to switch on the push-button start system.

Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E142431

Slide the release on the back of the transmitter, then pull the blade out.



E138618

Note: *Your vehicle keys came with a security label that provides important key cut information. Keep the label in a safe place for future reference.*

Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 67).

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

1. Remove the key blade from the transmitter.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142432

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



E138622

3. Remove the old battery.
4. Insert a new battery with the + facing downward. Press the battery down to make sure it is fully in the housing.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn sounds and the direction indicators flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

The horn sounds twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

Sounding the Panic Alarm (If Equipped)

Press the button to activate the alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to deactivate it.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

Remote Start

WARNING

To prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle, do not use remote start if your vehicle is parked indoors or areas that are not well ventilated.

The remote start button is on the transmitter.

This feature allows you to start your vehicle from the outside. The transmitter has an extended operating range.

Vehicles with automatic climate control can be configured to operate when your vehicle is remote started. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 105).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Many states and provinces have restrictions for the use of remote start. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding remote start systems.

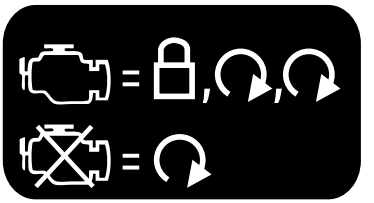
Note: *Do not use remote start if your vehicle is low on fuel.*

The remote start system does not work if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is on.
- The alarm system activates.
- You turn off the feature.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The powertrain fault indicator was on the last time you drove your vehicle.

Remote Starting your Vehicle

Note: *You must press each button within three seconds of each other. If you do not follow this sequence, your vehicle does not start remotely, the direction indicators do not flash twice and the horn does not sound.*



E138626

The label on your transmitter details the starting procedure.

To remote start your vehicle:

1. Press the lock button to lock all the doors.
2. Press the remote start button twice. The direction indicators flash twice.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start, unless quiet start is on. Quiet start runs the blower fan at a slower speed to reduce noise. You can switch it on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

The power windows do not work during remote start and the radio does not turn on automatically.

The parking lamps remain on and your vehicle runs for 5, 10 or 15 minutes, depending on the setting.

Note: *If you remote start your vehicle with an intelligent access transmitter, you must press the push button ignition switch on the instrument panel once while applying the brake pedal before driving your vehicle.*

Extending the Engine Running Time

To extend the engine running time duration of your vehicle during remote start, repeat steps 1 and 2 while the engine is running. If the duration is set to 10 minutes, the duration extends by another 10 minutes. For example, if your vehicle had been running from the first remote start for 5 minutes, your vehicle continues to run now for a total of 20 minutes. You can extend the engine running time duration to a maximum of 30 minutes.

Wait at least five seconds before remote starting after a vehicle shutdown.

Turning Your Vehicle Off After Remote Starting



Press the button once. The parking lamps turn off.

You may have to be closer to your vehicle than when starting due to ground reflection and the added noise of the running vehicle.

You can turn the remote start system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY

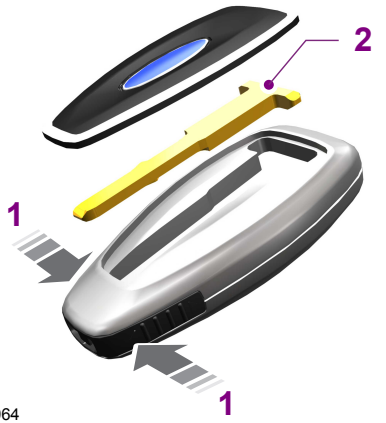
Intelligent Access Key



E162192

Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.



E87964

To release the key blade:

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

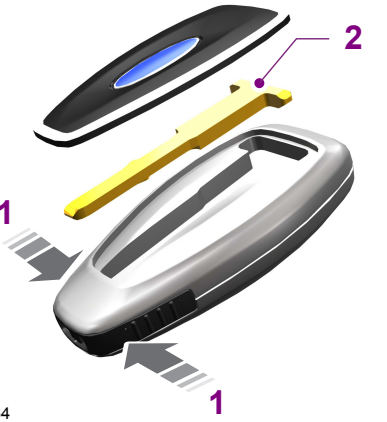
Programming a New Remote Control

To program an additional remote control See **Security** (page 67).

Changing the Remote Control Battery

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

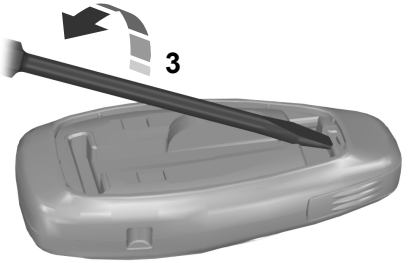
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.



E87964

1. Press and hold the buttons on the edges of the transmitter to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



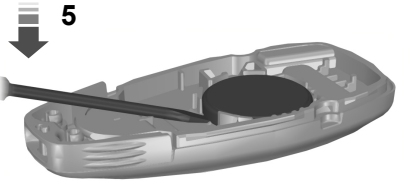
E105362

3. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully seperate the two halves of the remote control.



E119190

4. Twist the screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.



E125860

Note: *Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.*

5. Carefully remove the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery with the + facing downward.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Reinstall the key blade.

Note: *Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.*

Note: *Replacing the battery does not delete the transmitter from the vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.*

Locating Your Vehicle

Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The horn may sound and the direction indicators flash.

The horn may sound twice and the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Locking was not successful.
- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 67).

To re-program the passive anti-theft system see an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that remain unprogrammed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. They can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information by using the information display to determine:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle traveled with a MyKey.

Note: *Switch the ignition on to use the system.*

Note: *All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.*

Note: *For vehicles equipped with a push-button start, when both a MyKey and an admin key are present, the admin key will be recognized by the vehicle when you start the vehicle.*

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Safety belt reminder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat passengers' safety belts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, forward collision warning, lane departure warning and Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) with cross traffic alert.
- Satellite radio adult content restrictions, if equipped on your vehicle.

Configurable Settings

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the engine. You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key.

- A vehicle speed limit can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal or by setting cruise control.

WARNING

Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- Various vehicle speed minders can be set. Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display, followed by an audible tone when the preselected vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed-sensitive or compensated automatic volume control will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to turn off AdvanceTrac or traction control, E911 or Emergency Assist, or the Do Not Disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Use the information display to create a MyKey:

1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition. If your vehicle is equipped with a push-button start, place the intelligent access transmitter into the backup position. The location of your backup position is in another chapter.
2. Switch the vehicle on.
3. Access the main menu through the information display controls. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
Create MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

When prompted, hold the **OK** button until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted at the next start.

MyKey is successfully created. Make sure you label it so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

You can also program configurable settings for the key(s). See **Programming/Changing Configurable Settings**.

Programming/Changing Configurable Settings

Use the information display to access your configurable MyKey settings by doing the following:

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Use the arrow keys to get to the following menu selections:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.
MyKey	Press the **OK** button or the right arrow key.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *You can clear or change your MyKey settings at any time during the same key cycle as you created the MyKey. Once you have switched the vehicle off, however, you will need an admin key to change or clear your MyKey settings.*

Note: *When you make any changes to your MyKey settings, you change the settings for every MyKey. You cannot make individual changes to apply to certain MyKeys.*

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

You can clear or change your MyKey settings using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

To clear all MyKeys of all MyKey settings, press the left arrow button to access the main menu and scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
MyKey	Press the ***OK*** button or the right arrow button.
Clear MyKey	Press and hold the ***OK*** button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.
All MyKeys Cleared	

Note: *When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non Ford-approved, aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

All Vehicles

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key used to start the vehicle is not an admin key. The key used to start the vehicle is the only key. There always has to be at least one admin key. The passive anti-theft system is not programmed to your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 67).
I cannot program the configurable settings.	The key used to start your vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 55).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key used to start your vehicle is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 55).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Condition	Potential Causes
I lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
I lost a key.	Program a spare key. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 67).
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey is not being used by the intended user. The MyKeys have been cleared and the MyKey system has been reset.

Vehicles With Push-Button Start

Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The transmitter is not in the backup position. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
There are no MyKey driving modes.	An admin key is present when you switch the ignition on. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 55).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

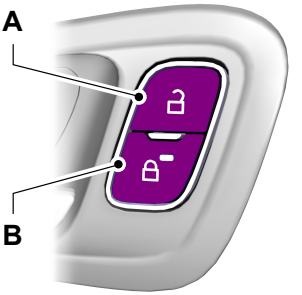
LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

You can use the power door lock control or the remote control to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Note: *Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

Power Door Locks

The power door lock control is on the driver and front passenger door panels.



E184784

A Unlock.

B Lock.

Door Lock Indicator

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

They will remain illuminated for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after approximately 11 seconds.

You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control or keyless keypad, or switch the ignition on, to restore function to these switches.

Opening a Rear Door From the Inside

Pull the interior door handle twice to unlock and open a rear door.

Remote Control

You can use the remote control at any time.

The liftgate or luggage compartment release button will only work when the vehicle speed is less than 4 mph (7 km/h).

Unlocking the Doors (Two-Stage Unlock)



Press the button to unlock the driver door. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for three seconds to change between driver door or all doors unlock mode. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate a change to the unlocking mode. Driver door unlock mode will only unlock the driver door when you press the unlock button once. All door unlock mode will unlock all doors when you press the unlock button once. The unlocking mode applies to the remote control, keyless entry keypad and intelligent access.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. The direction indicators will flash. Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the liftgate or luggage compartment are closed.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Mislock

If any door or the liftgate or luggage compartment is open, or if the hood is open on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm or remote start, the horn will sound twice and the direction indicators will not flash.

Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment



Press twice within three seconds to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate or luggage compartment before driving your vehicle. An unlatched liftgate or luggage compartment may cause objects to fall out or block your view.

Closing the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment

The liftgate or luggage compartment will not fully close if an intelligent access key is located inside the luggage compartment with the doors locked.

Note: *If a second intelligent access key is located within the liftgate or luggage compartment detection range, the liftgate or luggage compartment can be fully closed.*

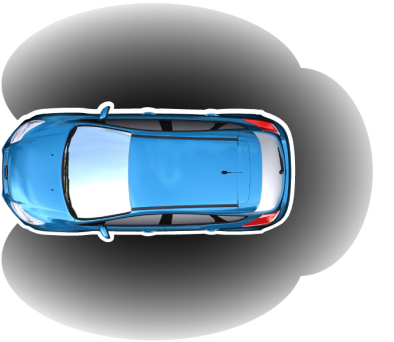
Activating Intelligent Access (If Equipped)

The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The intelligent access key battery has no charge.
- The intelligent access key frequencies are jammed.

Note: *If the system does not function, use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle. See* ***Keys and Remote Controls*** *(page 46).*

The system allows you to unlock, operate and lock your vehicle without using a key or remote control.



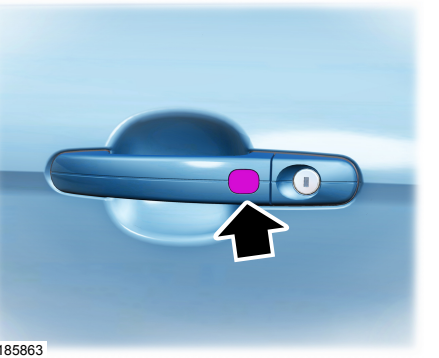
E78276

You must have the intelligent access key within 5 ft (1.5 m) of your vehicle.

Note: *The system may not function if the intelligent access key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

At a Door

Pull an exterior door handle to unlock and open the door. Do not touch the lock sensor on the front of the handle.



E185863

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

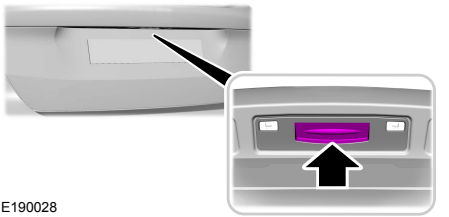
The locking sensors are on the front door handles.

Touch the locking area on the front of the door handle to lock your vehicle. There will be a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle again.

Note: *Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Note: *Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a locking sensor your vehicle will remain unlocked.*

At the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out of your vehicle if the key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock then unlock and the horn will sound twice if the key is still in the ignition.

You can still lock your vehicle with the key in the ignition. To do this, use the keyless entry keypad with the driver door closed, or press the lock button on the transmitter even if the doors are not closed.

If both front doors are closed, you can lock your vehicle by any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

This helps to prevent you from locking your key inside the passenger compartment or rear cargo area.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any door open, transmission in park (P) and the ignition off, the system will search for an intelligent access key in the passenger compartment after you close the last door. If the system finds a key, all of the doors will immediately unlock and the horn sounds twice, indicating that a key is inside.

When you open one of the front doors and lock your vehicle using the power door lock control, all doors will lock then unlock if the ignition is on.

Disabled Intelligent Access Keys

Intelligent access keys left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled.

You cannot use a disabled intelligent access key to switch the ignition on.

You will reactivate disabled intelligent access keys when you switch the ignition on using a valid key.

Autolock Feature

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- You shift into any gear putting your vehicle in motion.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Autounlock Feature

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed and your vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 4 mph (7 km/h).
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to accessory.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors will not autounlock.*

Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock

You can enable or disable the autolock and autounlock features independently of each other.

To enable or disable autolock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door unlock control and within five seconds, press the power door lock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

To enable or disable autounlock, do the following:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Switch the ignition on. The horn sounds indicating your vehicle is in programming mode.
6. Press the power door lock control and within five seconds, press the power door unlock control. The horn sounds once if disabled or twice if enabled.
7. Switch the ignition off. The horn sounds indicating programming is complete.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote entry system.

The lamps turn off if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.
- 25 seconds have elapsed.

The lamps will not turn off if:

- You switch them on with the lighting control.
- Any door is open.

Illuminated Exit

For vehicles with an integrated keyhead transmitter, the interior lamps and select exterior lamps illuminate when you close all the doors, you switch the ignition off and you remove the key from the ignition.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You insert the key in the ignition (integrated keyhead transmitter only).
- You press the **START/STOP** button (intelligent access key only).

Battery Saver

If you leave the courtesy lamps, dome lamps or headlamps on, the battery saver will turn them off 10 minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Accessory Mode Battery Saver for Intelligent Access Keys (If Equipped)

If you leave the ignition switched on and the engine is not running, the battery saver will turn the ignition off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after 45 minutes have elapsed.

Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment

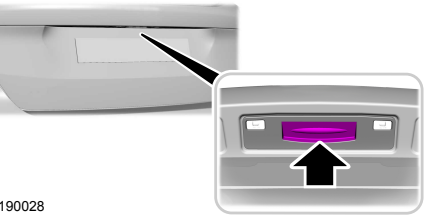
With the Remote Control

Press twice within three seconds to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment.

From Inside Your Vehicle

Press the button on the lighting control panel.

From Outside Your Vehicle



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate or luggage compartment. Your vehicle must be unlocked or have an intelligent access transmitter within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the liftgate or luggage compartment.

MANUAL LIFTGATE

WARNINGS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Make sure to close and latch the liftgate to prevent drawing exhaust fumes into your vehicle. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate open, keep the vents or windows open so outside air comes into your vehicle. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Note: *Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.*

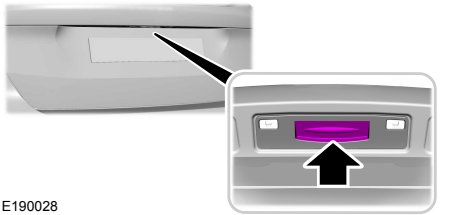
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Note: *Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.*

Opening the Liftgate

Manually



E190028

Press the release button above the license plate to unlatch the liftgate.

With the Remote Control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

Closing the Liftgate



E155976

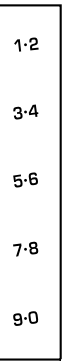
A handle is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD

The keypad is located near the driver window. It is invisible until touched and then it lights up so you can see and touch the appropriate buttons.

Note: *If you enter your entry code too fast on the keypad, the unlock function may not work. Enter your entry code again more slowly.*



E138637

You can use the keypad to do the following:

- Lock or unlock the doors.
- Program and erase user codes.
- Arm and disarm the anti-theft alarm.

You can operate the keypad with the factory-set five-digit entry code. The code is on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from an authorized dealer. You can also program up to five of your own five-digit personal entry codes.

Programming a Personal Entry Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Press **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Enter your personal five-digit code. You must enter each number within five seconds of each other.
4. Press **1•2** on the keypad to save personal code 1.

The doors lock then unlock to confirm that programming was successful.

To program additional personal entry codes, repeat Steps 1-3, then for Step 4:

- Press **3•4** to save personal code 2.
- Press **5•6** to save personal code 3.
- Press **7•8** to save personal code 4.
- Press **9•0** to save personal code 5.

Hints:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory-set code works even if you have set your own personal code.

Erasing a Personal Code

1. Enter the factory-set five-digit code.
2. Press and release **1•2** on the keypad within five seconds.
3. Press and hold **1•2** for two seconds. You must do this within five seconds of completing step 2.

All personal codes erase and only the factory-set five-digit code works.

Anti-Scan Feature

The keypad goes into an anti-scan mode if you enter the wrong code seven times. This mode turns off the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp flashes.

The anti-scan feature turns off after any of the following occur:

- One minute of keypad inactivity.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch your vehicle on.
- You unlock the vehicle using intelligent access.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors

Locking All Doors

Press and hold **7•8** and **9•0** on the keypad simultaneously with the driver door closed. You do not need to enter a code first.

Unlocking All Doors

Enter the factory-set code or your personal code, then press **3•4** on the keypad within five seconds.

Unlocking Only the Driver Door

Enter the factory-set or your personal five-digit code. You must press each number within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps illuminate.

Note: *All doors unlock if the two-stage unlocking feature is turned off. See* ***Locking and Unlocking*** *(page 59).*

INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE - 4-DOOR

WARNINGS

Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.

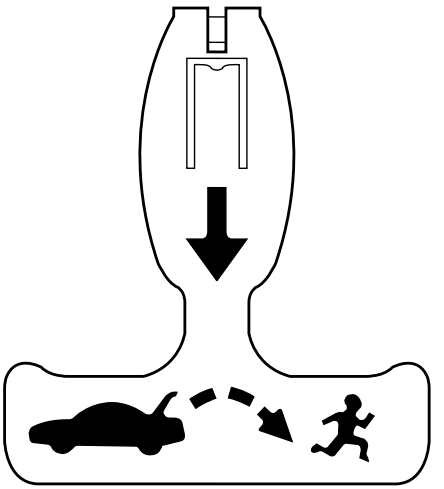
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

Your vehicle is equipped with a release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults if they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

Adults should familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.



E144403

The handle is located inside the luggage compartment either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or near the tail lamps. It is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

Pull the handle and push up on the luggage compartment door (lid) to open from within the luggage compartment.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in engine starting problems and a loss of security protection.*

Note: *Metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain may result in vehicle starting problems, especially if they are too close to the key when starting your vehicle. Prevent these objects from touching the coded key when starting your vehicle. If your vehicle fails to start, switch the ignition off, move all objects on the key chain away from the key and start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

SecuriLock

The system helps prevent the engine from starting unless you use a coded key programmed to your vehicle. A message may appear in the information display.

If your vehicle fails to start, the system may have a fault. Contact an authorized dealer. A message may appear in the information display.

Automatic Arming

The system arms when you switch the ignition off.

Automatic Disarming

The system disarms when you switch the ignition on with a coded key.

Replacement Keys

Note: *Your vehicle comes with two keys.*

The intelligent access key functions as a programmed key that operates the driver door lock and turns on the intelligent access with push button start system, as well as a remote control.

If your intelligent access keys are lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded key, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. You need to erase the key codes from your vehicle and program new coded keys.

Store a spare intelligent access key away from your vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming a Spare Integrated Keyhead Transmitter

You can program your own integrated keyhead transmitter or standard SecuriLock coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the vehicle immobilizer keycode and the remote entry portion of the remote control to your vehicle.

Only use integrated keyhead transmitters or standard SecuriLock keys.

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight coded keys to your vehicle. All eight can be integrated keyhead transmitters.*

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

1. Insert the first previously programmed coded key into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
3. Switch the ignition off and remove the first coded key from the ignition.
4. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off, insert the second previously coded key into the ignition.
5. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Switch the ignition off and remove the second previously programmed coded key from the ignition.
7. After at least 3 seconds but within 10 seconds of switching the ignition off and removing the previously programmed coded key, insert the new unprogrammed key into the ignition.
8. Switch the ignition from off to on. Keep the ignition on for at least six seconds.
9. Remove the newly programmed coded key from the ignition.

If you have successfully programmed the coded key, it will start your vehicle and operate the remote entry system.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 8. If programming remains unsuccessful, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Wait 20 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 9 to program an additional key.

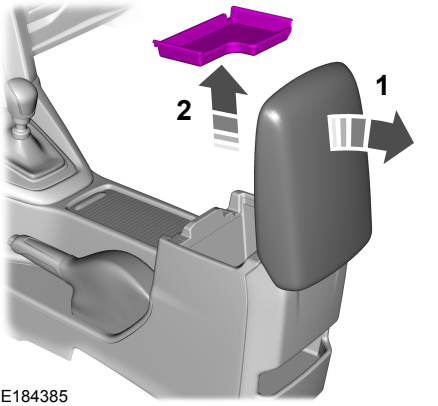
Programming a Spare Intelligent Access Key

You must have two previously programmed coded keys and the new unprogrammed key readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare key programmed if two previously programmed keys are not available.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off before beginning this procedure. Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you carry out any steps out of sequence.

Note: *You can program a maximum of eight intelligent access keys to your vehicle.*

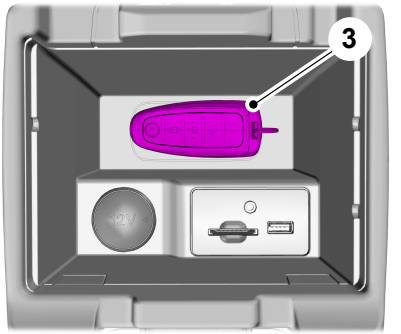
Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E184386

3. Place the first programmed intelligent access key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. Press the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
6. Remove the intelligent access key.
7. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed intelligent access key flat on the symbol.
8. Press the push button ignition switch.
9. Wait five seconds and then press the push button ignition switch again.
10. Remove the intelligent access key.
11. Within 10 seconds, place the unprogrammed intelligent access key flat on the symbol.
12. Press the push button ignition switch.

Programming is now complete. Check that the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new intelligent access key.

If programming was unsuccessful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 12. If programming remains unsuccessful, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM

The system will warn you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle. It will be triggered if any door, the luggage compartment or the hood is opened without using the key, remote control or keyless entry keypad.

The direction indicators will flash and the horn will sound if unauthorized entry is attempted while the alarm is armed.

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

Arming the Alarm

The alarm is ready to arm when there is not a key in your vehicle. Electronically lock your vehicle to arm the alarm.

Disarming the Alarm

Disarm the alarm by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control or keyless entry keypad.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.
- Use a key in the driver door to unlock your vehicle, then switch your vehicle on within 12 seconds.

Note: *Pressing the panic button on the remote control will stop the horn and signal indicators, but will not disarm the system.*

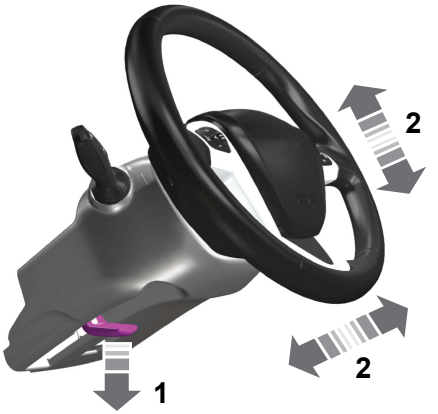
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING

Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See* ***Sitting in the Correct Position*** *(page 111).*



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



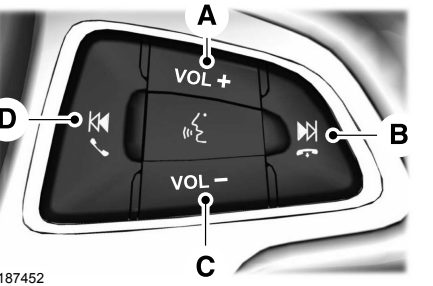
E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:



E187452

A Volume up.

B Seek up or next.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

C Volume down.

D Seek down or previous.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

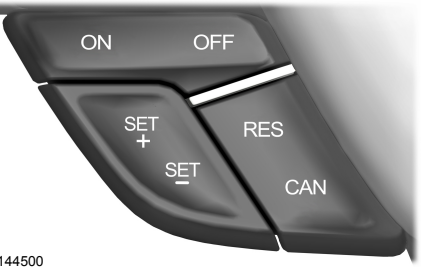
VOICE CONTROL



E186744

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 299).

CRUISE CONTROL



E144500

See **Principle of Operation** (page 160).

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

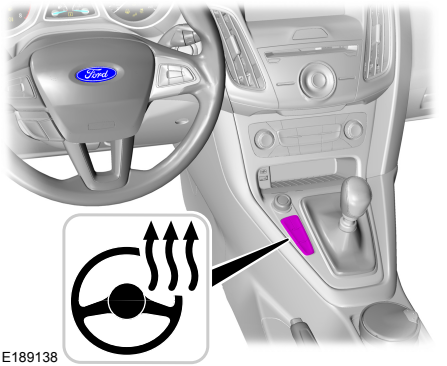


E188902

See **General Information** (page 92).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

HEATED STEERING WHEEL (If Equipped)


E189138

Press the button to switch the system on. The LED on the switch illuminates when the system is on.

Note: *The system only operates when the engine is running.*

Press the button to switch the system off.

The system automatically controls the temperature to avoid overheating.

Under high interior temperature conditions, there may be no perceived warming. This is normal and is not a sign of a system fault.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WINDSHIELD WIPERS

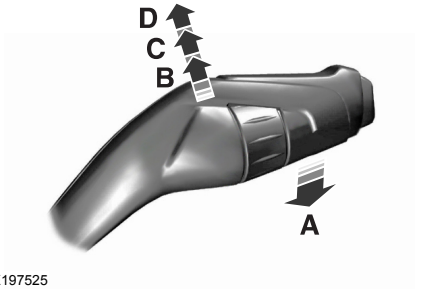
Note: *Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.*

Note: *Make sure you switch the windshield wipers and vehicle power off before using an automatic car wash.*

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See* ***Checking the Wiper Blades*** *(page 222). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See* ***Changing the Wiper Blades*** *(page 222).*

Note: *Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades or cause the wiper motor to burn out. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.*

Note: *When wiping on dry glass, the wipers may switch to the next lower operating mode (low-speed or intermittent). The previous operation mode may resume after the windshield becomes wet again.*

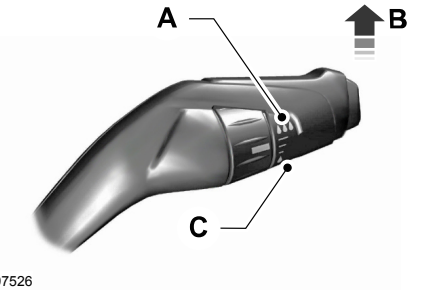


E197525

A Single wipe.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Normal wipe.
D High-speed wipe.

Note: *Move to position* ***O*** *marked on the wiper lever to switch off.*

Intermittent Wipe



E197526

A Short-wipe interval.
B Intermittent wipe.
C Long-wipe interval.

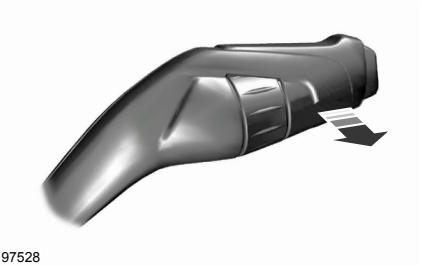
Push the wiper lever up to switch the wipers on, and then use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

WINDSHIELD WASHERS

Note: *Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.*


E197528

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

To operate the washers and spray the windshield, pull the lever toward you. When you release the lever, the wipers will operate for a short time.

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS (If Equipped)

Rear Window Wiper

Note: *Make sure you switch the rear window wiper and ignition off before using an automatic car wash.*



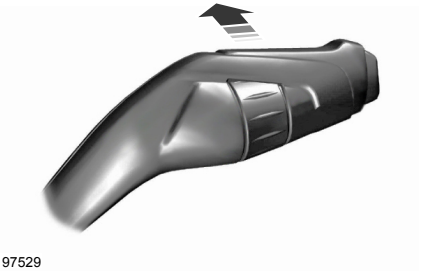
E197647

A Intermittent wipe.
B Low speed wipe.
C Off.

Press the top of the button to switch intermittent wipe on. Press the top of the button again to switch low speed wipe on. Press the bottom of the button to switch the rear window wiper off.

When you shift into reverse (R) and the front wipers are on, the rear wiper may automatically turn on to intermittent wipe.

Rear Window Washer


E197529

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, wiping continues for a short period of time.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

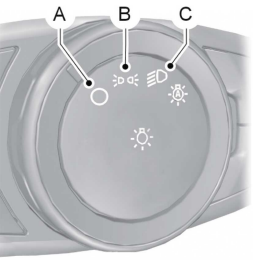
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

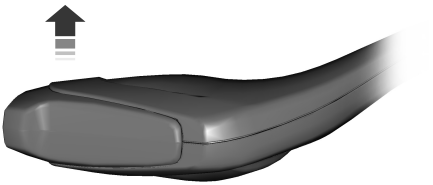
LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

A	Off
B	Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps
C	Headlamps

High Beams



E162679

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Headlamp Flasher



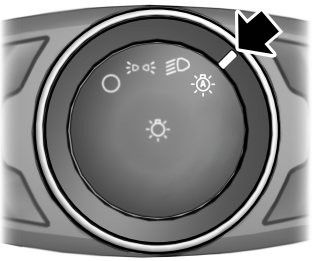
E162680

Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS (If Equipped)

WARNING

The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a collision.



E142451

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.
- Automatic high beam control.
- Adaptive headlamp control.

The headlamps remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. Use the information display controls to adjust the period of time that the headlamps remain on. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Note: *With the headlamps in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the high beam headlamps on until the autolamps system turns the low beam headlamps on.*

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps

The windshield wiper activated headlamps turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on and the lighting control is in the autolamps position. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

The headlamps will not turn on by wiper activation:

- During a mist wipe.
- When the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in intermittent mode.

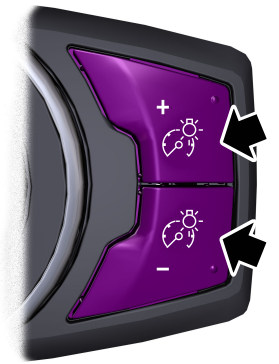
Note: *If you switch autolamps and autowipers on, the headlamps will automatically turn on when the windshield wipers continuously operate.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER

Note: *You disable the manual dimmer when you adjust the setting to Auto Dimming in the information display. See* ***Information Displays*** *(page 92).*

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it becomes discharged, the illuminated components will switch to the maximum setting.*



E161902

Press repeatedly or press and hold until you reach the desired level.

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING

The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Also, the autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Make sure the headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable)

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. The ignition is switched to the on position.
2. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.
3. The lighting control is in the off, parking lamp or autolamps positions.
4. The headlamps are off.

Type 2 - Configurable

Switch the daytime running lamps on or off using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

The daytime running lamps turn on when:

1. They are switched on in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92).
2. The ignition is switched to the on position.
3. The transmission is not in park (P) for vehicles with automatic transmissions or the parking brake is released for vehicles with manual transmissions.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

4. The lighting control is in the autolamps position.
5. The headlamps are off.

The other lighting control switch positions do not activate the daytime running lamps, and you can use them to temporarily override autolamp control.

When switched off in the information display, the daytime running lamps are off in all lighting control switch positions.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL (If Equipped)

The system automatically turns on the high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. When it detects the headlights of an approaching vehicle, the rear lamps of the preceding vehicle or street lighting, the system turns off the high beams before they distract other drivers. The low beams remain on.

Note: *If it appears that automatic high beam is not functioning properly, check the windshield in front of the camera for a blockage. A clear view of the road is required for proper system operation. Make sure that authorized personnel repair any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view.*

Note: *If the system detects a blockage such as bird droppings, bug splatter, snow or ice, and you do not observe changes, the system may go into low beam mode until you clear the blockage. A message may also appear in the information display noting the front camera is blocked.*

Note: *Typical road dust, dirt and water spots do not affect the performance of the automatic high beam control. However, in cold or inclement weather conditions, you may notice a decrease in the availability of the automatic high beam control, especially at start up. If you want to change the beam state independently of the system, you may switch the high beams on or off using the lighting control switch. Automatic high beam control resumes when conditions are correct.*

Note: *Modification of your vehicle ride height such as using much larger tires, may degrade feature performance.*

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to decide when to switch the high beams off and on.

Once the system is active, the high beams switch on if:

- The ambient light level is low enough.
- There is no traffic in front of the vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).

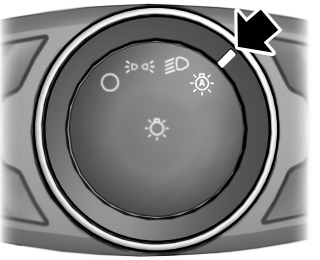
The high beams turn off if:

- The system detects the headlamps of an approaching vehicle or the rear lamps of a preceding vehicle.
- Vehicle speed falls below approximately 26 mph (42 km/h).
- The ambient light level is high enough that high beams are not required.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The camera is blocked.

Activating the System

Switch on the system in the information display and switch the lighting control to the autolamps position. See **Information Displays** (page 92). See **Autolamps** (page 76).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142451

Manually Overriding the System



E169254

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)



E142453

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except Off and the high beams are not on.

DIRECTION INDICATORS



E162681

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: *Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.*

INTERIOR LAMPS

The lamps turn on when:

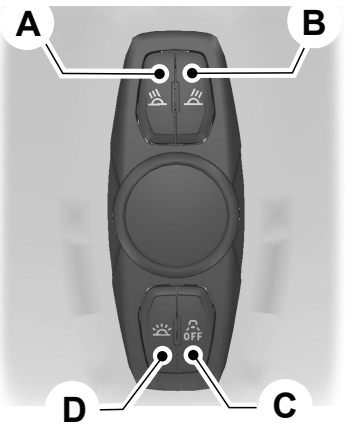
- You open any door.
- You press a remote control button.
- You press the buttons on the map lamps.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)

Note: *Press the door function switch to switch off interior lights when you open any door. The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off. When the door function is off and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps stay off. Press the switch again to switch the door function back on. The indicator lamp illuminates white when the door function is on. When the door function is on and you open a door, the courtesy and door lamps switch on.*

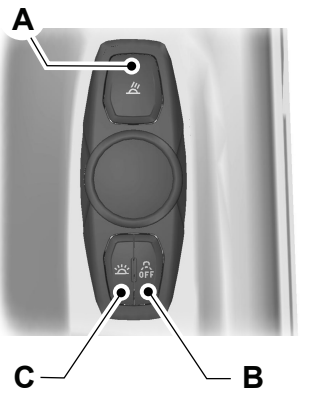
Center Mounted Lamp



E139420

A Left-hand side map lamp.
B Right-hand side map lamp.
C Door function switch.
D All lamps on switch.

Side Mounted Lamp



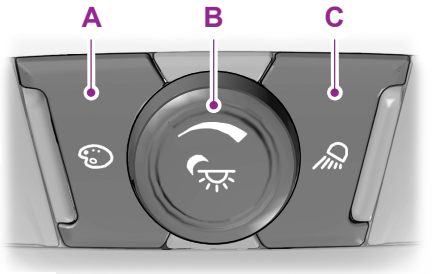
E139419

A Map lamp.
B Door function switch.
C All lamps on switch.

AMBIENT LIGHTING (If Equipped)

The ambient lighting system illuminates the interior with a choice of several colors. The ambient lighting control is located in the overhead console.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142456

A Color palette
B Control knob
C Search mode

Rotate B past the first detent to switch on and adjust to the desired brightness.

Press A to cycle through the color choices.

Press C to switch on all interior lamps and the ambient lighting. Press C again to switch off the interior lamps and return the ambient lighting to the previously selected color.

The ambient lighting will switch on when the following conditions have been met:

- you switch the ignition on
- you switch the headlamps on

The ambient lighting will remain on until you switch the ignition off and one of the following conditions have been met:

- you lock your vehicle
- the accessory delay timer expires.

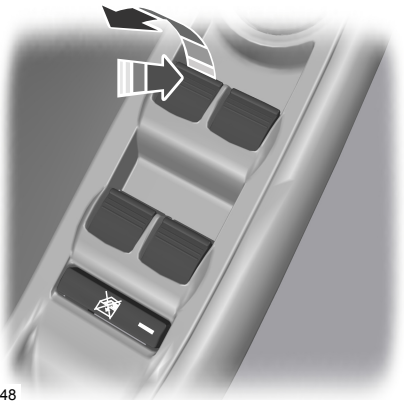
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

POWER WINDOWS

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



E70848

Press the control to open the window.

Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

One-Touch Down (If Equipped)

Press the control fully and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Up (If Equipped)

Lift the control fully and release it. Press or lift it again to stop the window.

Window Lock



E70850

Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It lights when the rear window controls lock.

Bounce-Back (If Equipped)

The window stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Overriding the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

When you override the bounce-back feature the window will not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Proceed as follows to override this protection feature when there is a resistance, for example in winter:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. You disabled the bounce-back feature and you can now close the window manually. The window travels past the point of resistance and you can close it fully.

Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible if the window does not close after the third attempt.

Resetting the Bounce-Back Feature

WARNING

The bounce-back feature remains turned off until you reset the memory.

If you have disconnected the battery, you must reset the bounce-back memory separately for each window.

1. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the control.
3. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
4. Release the control.
5. Lift and hold the control again for a few seconds.
6. Release the control.
7. Press and hold the control until the window is fully open.
8. Lift and hold the control until the window is fully closed.
9. Release the control.
10. Open the window and then try to close it automatically.
11. Repeat the procedure if the window does not close automatically.

Accessory Delay (If Equipped)

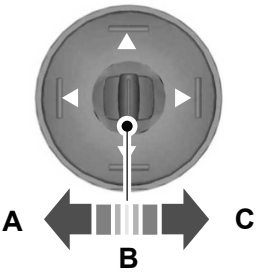
You can use the window controls for several minutes after switching off the ignition or until opening either front door.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors

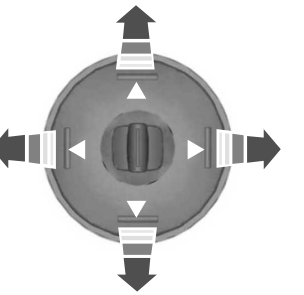
WARNING

Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving.



E70846

A Left-hand mirror
B Off
C Right-hand mirror



E70847

Press the arrows to adjust the mirror.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

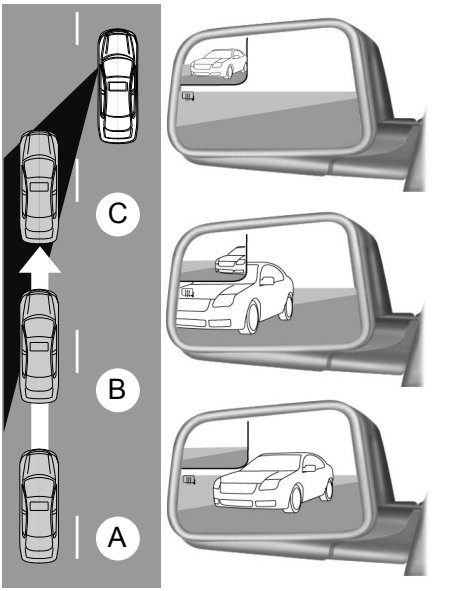
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING

Objects in the blind spot mirror are closer than they appear.

Blind spot mirrors have an integrated convex mirror built into the upper outboard corner of the exterior mirrors. They are designed to increase your visibility along the side of your vehicle.

Check the main mirror first before a lane change, then check the blind spot mirror. If no vehicles are present in the blind spot mirror and the traffic in the adjacent lane is at a safe distance, signal that you intend to change lanes. Glance over your shoulder to verify traffic is clear and carefully change lanes.



E138665

The image of the approaching vehicle is small and near the inboard edge of the main mirror when it is at a distance. The image becomes larger and begins to move outboard across the main mirror as the vehicle approaches (A). The image will transition from the main mirror and begin to appear in the blind spot mirror as the vehicle approaches (B). The vehicle will transition to your peripheral field of view as it leaves the blind spot mirror (C).

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)

See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING

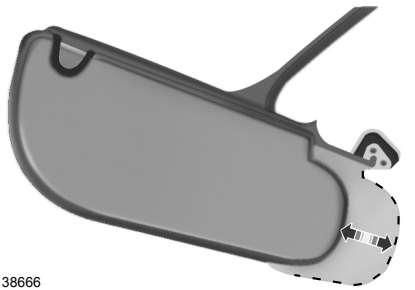
Do not adjust the mirror when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.*

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

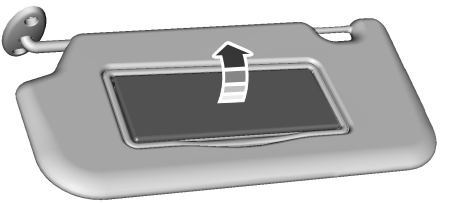
SUN VISORS



E138666

Rotate the sun visor toward the side window and extend it rearward for extra shade.

Illuminated Vanity Mirror (If Equipped)



E162197

Lift the cover to switch the lamp on.

MOONROOF

WARNINGS

Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. They may seriously injure themselves.

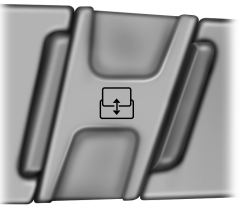
When closing the moonroof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The moonroof control is on the overhead console.

The moonroof has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop its movement during a one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Opening and Closing the Moonroof


E138669

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof. The moonroof stops short of the fully opened position.

Note: *This position helps to reduce wind noise or rumbling that may happen with the moonroof fully open. Press and hold the control again to fully open the moonroof.*

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

Bounce-Back

The moonroof stops automatically while closing. It reverses some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

Press and hold the front of the control within two seconds of a bounce-back event to override this function. While bounce-back is active, the closing force increases for each of the next three times that you close the moonroof.

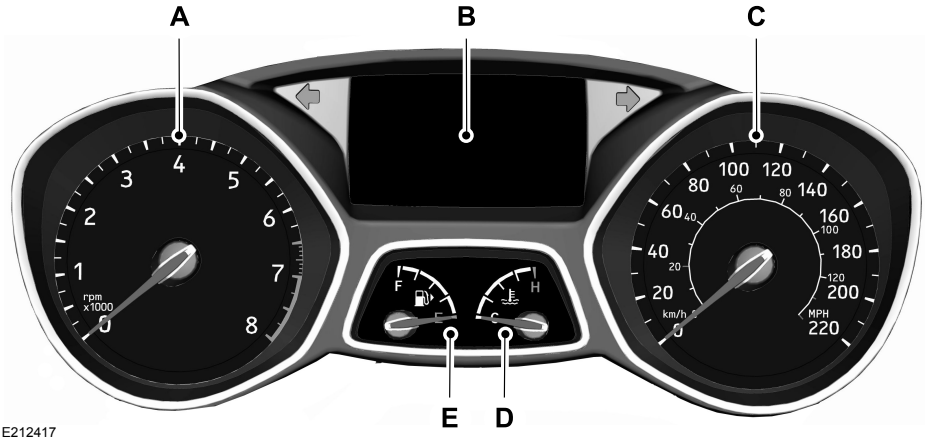
Venting the Moonroof

Press and release the front of the control to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the control to close the moonroof.

Note: *When you vent the moonroof, it rises to 1.57 in (4 cm) and then lowers slightly. This is normal. You cannot stop the moonroof in the higher position.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GAUGES



E212417

A Tachometer.
B Information display.
C Speedometer.
D Engine coolant temperature gauge.
E Fuel Gauge.

Information Display

Compass (If Equipped)

Displays the vehicle's heading direction.

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Outside Air Temperature (If Equipped)

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 95).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 92).

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains in the center section.

Note: *Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).

Fuel Gauge

Note: *: The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient.*

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

The needle should move toward F when you refuel your vehicle. If the needle points to E after adding fuel, this indicates your vehicle needs service soon.

After refueling some variability in needle position is normal.

Note: *It may take a short time for the needle to reach F after leaving the gas station. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.*

Note: *The fuel amount dispensed into the tank is a little less or more than the gauge indicated. This is normal and depends upon the slope of pavement at the gas station.*

Note: *If the gas station nozzle shuts off before the tank is full, try a different gas pump nozzle.*

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder triggers at about 50 miles (80 km). The low fuel warning light will light, a warning chime will sound and a pop up will be shown in the display indicating the remaining distance to empty. You will also get a subsequent reminder at 20, 10 and 0 miles.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps light when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: *Some warning indicators appear in the information display and function the same as a warning lamp but do not display when you start your vehicle.*

Adaptive Cruise Control (If Equipped)



The speed control system indicator light changes color to indicate what mode the system is in.

On (white light): Illuminates when you switch on the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when you switch off the speed control system.

Engaged (green light): Illuminates when you engage the adaptive cruise control system. Turns off when you disengage the speed control system.

Anti-Lock Braking System



If it lights when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. You continue to have normal braking (without anti-lock braking system) unless the brake system warning lamp also lights. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

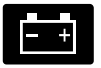
Auto Start-stop (If Equipped)



It lights to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Battery



If it lights while driving, it indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Blind Spot Monitor (If Equipped)



It lights when you switch this feature off or in conjunction with a message. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166). See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Brake System



It lights when you engage the parking brake with the ignition on.

If it lights when you are driving, check that the parking brake is not engaged. If the parking brake is not engaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction. Have the system checked immediately by an authorized dealer.

WARNING

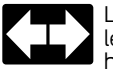
Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It takes you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)



Lights when you switch on this feature. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 160).

Direction Indicator



Lights when you switch on the left or right direction indicator or hazard warning flasher. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 226).

Door Ajar



Displays when the vehicle is on and any door is not completely closed.

Engine Oil



If it illuminates with the engine running or when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).

Note: *Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.*

Fasten Safety Belt



It lights and a tone sounds to remind you to fasten your safety belt. See **Seatbelt Reminder** (page 33).

Front Airbag



If it fails to light when you first power your vehicle, continues to flash or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)



It lights when you switch the front fog lamps on.

High Beam



Lights when you switch the high beam headlamps on. It flashes when you use the headlamp flasher.

Information (If Equipped)



Lights when a new message is stored in the information display. It is red or amber in color depending on the severity of the message and remains on until the cause of the message has been rectified. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Lane Keeping Aid (If Equipped)



Lights when the lane keeping system is activated.

Liftgate Ajar



Lights when the liftgate is not completely closed.

Low Fuel Level



It lights when the fuel level is low or the fuel tank is nearly empty. Refuel as soon as possible.

Low Tire Pressure Warning



It lights when your tire pressure is low. If the lamp remains on with the engine running or when driving, check your tire pressure as soon as possible.

It also lights momentarily when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not light when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

Low Washer Fluid



Lights when the windshield washer fluid is low.

Parking Lamps



Lights when you switch the parking lamps on.

Service Engine Soon



If the service engine soon indicator light stays illuminated after you start the engine, it indicates that the On Board Diagnostics system (OBD) has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emissions control system. Refer to On board diagnostics (OBD) in the Fuel and Refueling chapter for more information about having your vehicle serviced. See **Emission Control System** (page 135).

If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.

WARNING

Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire. Have your vehicle serviced immediately.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The service engine soon indicator light illuminates when you first switch the ignition on before engine start to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing.

Normally, the service engine soon light stays on until you crank the engine, then turns itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the service engine soon light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See **Emission Control System** (page 135).

Stability Control



Lights when the system is active. If it remains on or does not light when you power your vehicle on, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system turns off. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. See **Principle of Operation** (page 149).

Stability Control Off



Lights when you switch the system off. It goes out when you switch the system back on or when you power off your vehicle. See **Principle of Operation** (page 149).

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Key in Ignition Warning Chime

Sounds when you open the driver's door and you have left the key in the ignition.

Keyless Warning Alert (If Equipped)

Sounds the horn twice when you exit your vehicle with the intelligent access key, after the last door is closed and your keyless vehicle is in RUN, indicating your vehicle is still on.

Headlamps On Warning Chime

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Parking Brake On Warning Chime

Sounds when you have left the parking brake on and drive your vehicle. If the warning chime remains on after you have released the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

Low Fuel Minder

A low fuel reminder triggers at about 50 miles (80 km). The low fuel warning light will light, a warning chime will sound and a pop up will be shown in the display indicating the remaining distance to empty. You will also get a subsequent reminder at 20, 10 and 0 miles.

Fasten Safety Belt

Sounds as a reminder to fasten your safety belt.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

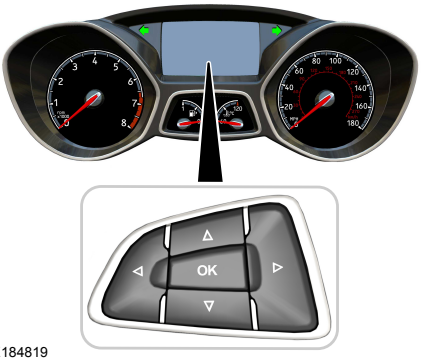
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E184819

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right arrow button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left arrow button to exit a submenu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.*

Trip 1 and 2[1]	
Option to display all the values on screen.	
Speed	
Trip Odometer	
Average Fuel	Ford EcoMode

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Trip 1 and 2[1]	
	Gear Shifting
	Anticipation
	Speed
	Ford EcoMode
Inst Fuel Econ	
Distance to E	
Trip Timer	
Outside Temp.	
Option to select for navigation display.	

[1] See **Trip Computer** (page 95).

Information
Driver Alert
MyKey
MyKey Info
System Check

Settings		
Driver Assist	Traction Ctrl	
	Blindspot	
	Collision Warn	
	Cross Traffic	
	Cruise Control	Adaptive
		Normal
	Driver Alert	
	Hill Start Assist	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Settings			
	Tire Monitor		
	Lane Keeping		
Vehicle settings	Auto Engine Off		
	Compass	Display	
		Calibrate	
		Set Zone	
	Chimes	Park Slot	
		Information	
		Warning	
	Lighting	Traffic (R/L)	
		Auto Highbeam	
		Rain Light	
		Ambient Light	
		DRL	
		Dimming	
		Hdlamp Delay	
	Remote Start	Climate Control	Heater - A/C
			Rear Defrost
			Driver Seat
			Passengr Seat
		Duration	
		Quiet Start	
		Restore Default	
		System	
	Wipers	Rain Sensing	
MyKey	Create MyKey	Hold OK to Create MyKey	
	Traction Ctrl	Always On or User Selectable	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Settings		
	ESC	Always On or User Selectable
	911 Assist	Always On or User Selectable
	Max Speed	xx MPH (xx km/h) or Off
	Speed Warning	xx MPH (xx km/h) or Off
	Volume Limiter	
	Do Not Disturb	Always On or User Selectable
	Clear MyKeys	Hold OK to Clear All MyKeys
Display	Navigation info	
	Language	Choose your applicable setting
	Vehicle Graphic	
	Distance	Choose your applicable setting
	Temperature	Choose your applicable setting

System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the list. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.*

Note: *The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.*



E184814

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Message Indicator (If Equipped)

The message indicator illuminates to supplement some messages.

The indicator will be red or amber depending on the severity of the condition and it remains on until the condition is resolved.

A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

Alarm

Message	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See **Anti-Theft Alarm** (page 69).
Alarm fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Automatic Engine Shutdown

Message	Action
Engine Shuts Off In {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds	Displays when the engine is getting ready to shut off.
Engine Shut Off For Fuel Economy	Displays when the engine has shut off to help increase fuel economy.
Engine Shuts Off in {seconds to shut off:#0} Seconds Press Ok to Override	Displays when the engine is getting ready to shut off. You can press OK on the left steering wheel button to override the shut down.

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical system overvoltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact an authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact an authorized dealer.

Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System

Message	Action
Blindspot Low visibility See manual	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).
Blindspot right sensor fault Service required	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot left sensor fault Service required	Displayed when a fault with the system has occurred. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Blindspot not available Trailer attached	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from right	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).
Cross Traffic Vehicle coming from left	Displayed when the system detects a vehicle. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Message	Action
Cross Traffic Sensor blocked See manual	Displayed when the blind spot information system and cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).
Cross Traffic fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Cross Traffic not available Trailer attached	Displayed when the system is not available due to trailer use. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166).

Doors

Message	Action
Passenger door ajar	Displays when the door(s) listed is not completely closed.
Driver door ajar	
Passenger side rear door ajar	
Driver side rear door ajar	
Liftgate Ajar	Displays when the luggage compartment is not completely closed.
Hood open	Displays when the hood is not completely closed.

Engine

Message	Action
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. Contact an authorized dealer.
High engine temperature Stop safely	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and allow the engine to cool. If the problem persists, contact an authorized dealer. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperature.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Hill Start Assist** (page 146).

Keyless Vehicle

Message	Action
Ford KeyFree Key inside vehicle	Displays to remind you that the key is in the trunk. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Ford KeyFree No key detected	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Switch ign. off Press ENGINE Start/Stop button	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Press brake to start	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Ford KeyFree Key not inside car	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See **Remote Control** (page 46).

Lane Keeping Aid

Message	Action
Lane Keeping Sys Fault Service required	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Lighting

Message	Action
Brake lamp Bulb fault	Displays when the brake lamp bulb has burned out. Contact an authorized dealer.
Low beam Bulb fault	Displays when the low beam headlamp bulb has burned out. Contact an authorized dealer.
Headlamp fault Service required	Displays when an electrical system problem occurs with the headlamp system. Contact an authorized dealer.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Oil change required	Displays when the engine oil life is depleted and requires a change. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).
Brake fluid level low Service now	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 220).

MyKey

Message	Action
MyKey active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Speed Limited to XX MPH/km/h	Displays when starting the vehicle and MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
MyKey Vehicle Near Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on and the vehicle speed is approaching 80 mph (130 km/h).
MyKey Vehicle at Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
MyKey Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
MyKey Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and Belt-Minder is activated.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Message	Action
MyKey Park aid cannot be deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and park aid is activated.
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
MyKey Place key in key holder	Displays when programming a MyKey.
MyKey ESC cannot be deactivated	Displays when programming a MyKey.

Occupant Protection

Message	Action
Service Beltminder	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Parking aid malfunction Service required	Displays when the system has detected a condition that requires service. Contact an authorized dealer. See **Parking Aids** (page 151).

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle at a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist fault Service required	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle at a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering fault Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system, or the passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Starting System

Message	Action
Press brake to start	Displays when starting the vehicle as a reminder to apply the brake.
Cranking time exceeded	Displays when the vehicle fails to start.

Start-Stop

Message	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	Switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop fault Service required	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The engine needs to be restarted, press the clutch pedal to start. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 127).
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	See an authorized dealer.
Transmission overheating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop in a safe place as soon as it's possible.
Transmission Hot Wait ...	Transmission is hot. Wait as needed to let it cool.
Transmission not in Park Select P	Displays as a reminder to shift into park.
Press brake to unlock gearshift lever	Displays to request the operator to apply the brake as needed by the transmission.
Gearshift lever unlocked	Displays when the transmission shift lever is unlocked and free to select gears.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

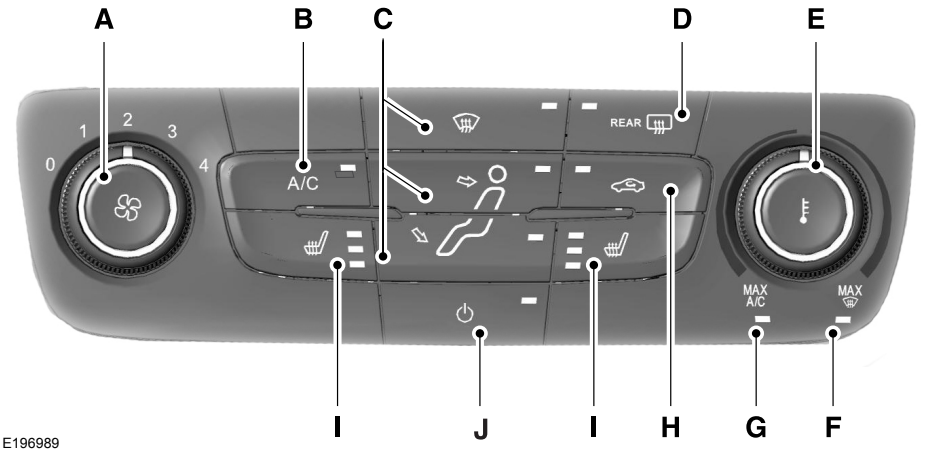
Message	Action
Low Tire Pressure	Displays when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	Displays when the tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, see See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259). If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction control off	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off. See **Using Traction Control** (page 148).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL



E196989

A **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

B **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

C **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

Note: At least one of these buttons illuminates when the system is on.

D **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

E **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle.

F **MAX Defrost:** Adjust the control to turn on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

G **MAX A/C:** Adjust the control for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on.

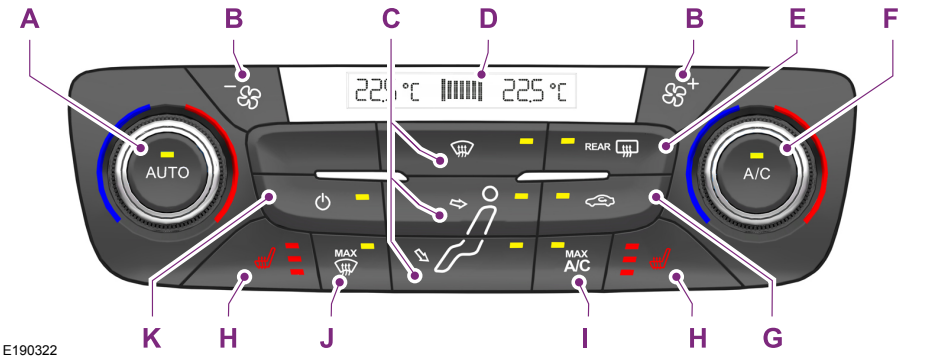
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

H **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

I **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 116).

J **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL



E190322

A **AUTO:** Press the button to switch on automatic operation. Adjust to select the desired temperature. Fan speed, air distribution, air conditioning operation, and outside or recirculated air are automatically adjusted to heat or cool the vehicle to maintain the desired temperature. You can also switch off dual zone mode by pressing and holding the button for more than two seconds.

B **Fan speed control:** Adjusts the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

C **Air distribution control:** Adjust the control to turn airflow from the windshield, instrument panel, or footwell vents on or off. You can distribute air through any combination of these vents.

D **Climate control display:** The display shows the set temperatures and the fan speed.

E **Heated rear window:** Press the button to switch the heated rear window on and off. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 109).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

F **A/C:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

G **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.

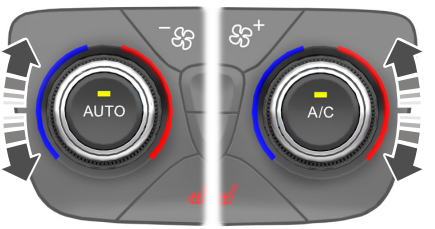
H **Heated seats (if equipped):** Press the button to switch the heated seats on and off. See **Heated Seats** (page 116).

I **MAX A/C:** Press the button for maximum cooling. Recirculated air flows through the instrument panel vents, air conditioning automatically turns on and the fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed.

J **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to switch on defrost. Outside air flows through the windshield vents, air conditioning automatically turns on, and fan automatically adjusts to the highest speed. You can also use this setting to defrost and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. The heated rear window also automatically turns on when you select maximum defrost.

K **Power:** Press the button to switch the system on and off. When the system is off, it prevents outside air from entering the vehicle.

Temperature Control



E183686

You can set a temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). If you select LO, the system is set to permanent cooling. If you select HI, the system is set to permanent heating.

Note: *If you select LO or HI, the system does not maintain a stable temperature.*

Single Zone Temperature Control

In this mode, the climate control system links the temperature settings for both the driver's side and passenger's side. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver's side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger's side.

To switch back to single zone control from dual zone, press and hold **AUTO** for a few seconds. The passenger's side temperature switches to the driver's side temperature setting.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Dual Zone Temperature Control

Select a temperature for the passenger's side using the rotary control on the passenger's side. Single zone temperature control automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver's side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver's side and passenger's side temperatures independently. The display shows the temperature settings for each side.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: *Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.*

Note: *To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.*

Note: *Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.*

Note: *Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.*

Note: *To improve the time to reach comfort in hot weather, drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.*

Manual Climate Control

Note: *To reduce fogging of the windshield during humid weather, adjust the air distribution control to the windshield air vents position.*

Automatic Climate Control

Note: *Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. The system automatically adjusts to heat or cool the cabin to your selected temperature as quickly as possible. For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs airflow to the windshield and side window vents. In addition, the fan may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.*

Note: *If you select **AUTO** during hot outside temperatures, or when the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system automatically uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. When the interior reaches the selected temperature, the system automatically switches to using outside air.*

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the fan speed to a high speed setting as soon as you feel warm air.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the footwell air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the temperature control to the **MAX A/C** position.	Press the **MAX A/C** button.
2	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	Drive with the windows fully open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the center setting.	Press the **AUTO** button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Select the instrument panel air vents using the air distribution buttons.	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Select the windshield air vents using the air distribution buttons.	Press the defrost button.
2	Press the **A/C** button.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting. Use 72ºF (22ºC) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.
3	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

Heated Rear Window

Note: *Make sure the vehicle is running before operating the heated windows.*



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window will automatically turn off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

Heated Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)



When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors will automatically turn on.

Note: *Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.*

Note: *Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.*

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter, which gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Replace the filter at regular intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

REMOTE START

The climate control system adjusts the cabin temperature during remote start.

You cannot adjust the system during remote start operation. Switch on the ignition to return the system to its previous settings. You can now make adjustments. You need to switch on certain vehicle-dependent features, such as:

- Heated seats.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated rear window.
- Heated steering wheel.

You can adjust the settings using the information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 92).

Automatic Settings

You can set the climate control to operate in AUTO mode through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater-A/C > Auto. The climate control system automatically sets the interior temperature to 72ºF (22ºC).

In hot weather, the system is set to 72ºF (22ºC). Cooled seats are set to high (if available, and selected to AUTO in the information display).

In cold weather, the system is set to 72ºF (22ºC). The rear defroster and heated mirrors automatically turn on.

Last Settings

You can set the climate control to operate using the last climate control settings through the information display setting: Remote Start > Climate Control > Heater–A/C > Last Settings. The climate control system automatically uses the settings last selected before you turned off the vehicle.

Heated and Cooled Devices

Heated devices typically switch on during cold weather, and cooled devices during hot weather.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

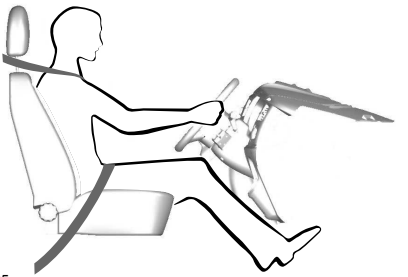
SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS

Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the safety belt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a crash.

Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seat backrest reclined too far, can result in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat backrest, with your feet on the floor.

Do not place objects higher than the seat backrest to reduce the risk of serious injury in the event of a crash or during heavy braking.



E68595

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest more than 30 degrees.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 10 inches (25 centimeters) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS

To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

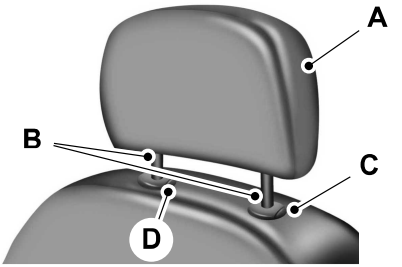
WARNINGS

The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible, it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.

Install the head restraint properly to help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.

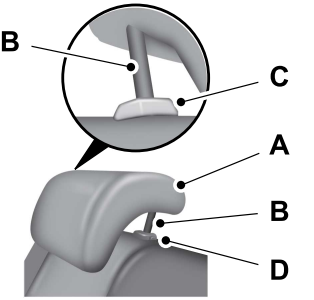
Note: *Adjust the seatback to an upright driving position before adjusting the head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable. If you are extremely tall, adjust the head restraint to its highest position.*

Front seat and rear seat outboard head restraints



E138642

Rear center head restraint



E198013

The head restraints consist of:

A	An energy absorbing head restraint.
B	Two steel stems.
C	Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
D	Guide sleeve unlock and remove button.

Adjusting the Head Restraint

Raising the Head Restraint

Pull the head restraint up.

Lowering the Head Restraint

1. Press and hold button C.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Removing the Head Restraint

1. Pull the head restraint up until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold buttons C and D.
3. Pull the head restraint up.

Note: *For the front head restraints, you may need to use a key or similar object to release the head restraint. Press the key into the guide sleeve unlock and remove button to release the head restraint.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Installing the Head Restraint

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Tilting Head Restraints (If Equipped)

The front head restraints tilt for extra comfort. To tilt the head restraint, do the following:



E144727

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the desired position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivoting it forward again will then release it to the rearward, un-tilted position.

MANUAL SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

WARNINGS

Rock the seat backward and forward after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged.

The manual front seats may consist of:



E197725

A	A bar to move the seat backward and forward.
B	A lever to adjust the height of the seat.
C	A lever to adjust the angle of the seatback.

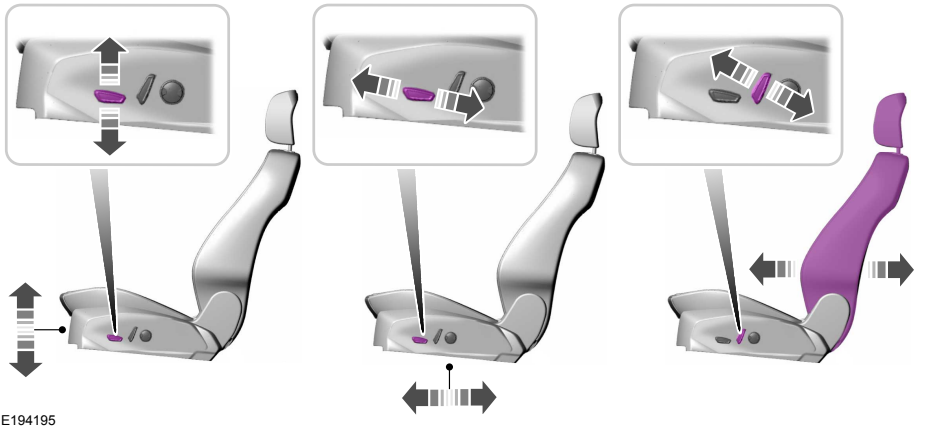
POWER SEATS

WARNINGS

Do not adjust the driver seat or seatback when your vehicle is moving. Adjusting your seatback while your vehicle is in motion may cause loss of control of your vehicle.

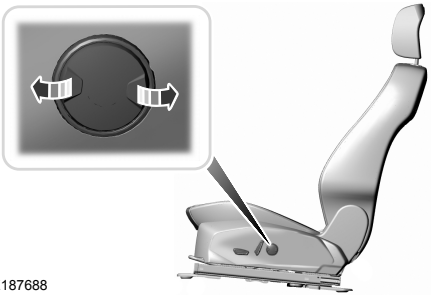
Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E194195

Power Lumbar (If Equipped)



E187688



E156656

REAR SEATS

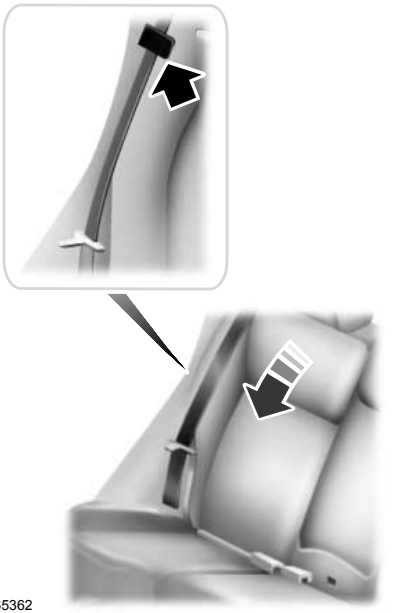
Folding the Seatback

Note: *Before lowering the seatback(s), remove the outboard head restraints. See* ***Head Restraints*** *(page 111).*

Note: *Your vehicle may have split seatbacks that must be folded individually.*

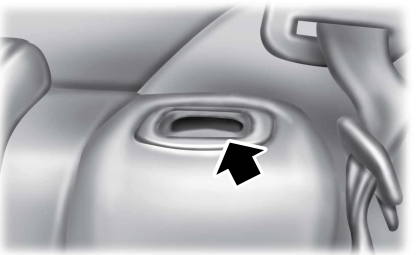
1. Press the unlock buttons down.
2. Push the seatback forward.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E165362

3. Stow the safety belt in the belt stowage clip. This will prevent the safety belt from getting caught in the seat latch.



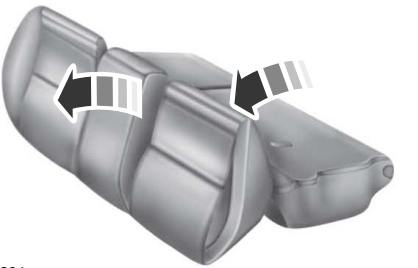
E184203

When raising the seatback(s), make sure you hear the seat latch into place and that no red portion is visible on the release button on both sides.

Flip Up Seat Cushions (If Equipped)

WARNING

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. Make sure that the safety belt is not laying on the seat latch. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to make sure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E184204

For additional cargo space, flip the seat cushions up before folding the seatback. This feature is only available on vehicles with a split folding seatback.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

HEATED SEATS (If Equipped)

WARNING

People who are unable to feel pain to their skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the heated seat. The heated seat may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the heated seat to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles or other pointed objects. This may damage the heating element which may cause the heated seat to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.
- Operate the heated seats unless the engine is running. Doing so can cause the battery to lose charge.



E146941

Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. Warmer settings are indicated by more indicator lights.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

12 Volt DC Power Point

WARNING

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: *After starting your vehicle, you can use the socket to power 12-volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 amps.*

After you switch your vehicle off, the power supply works only for a maximum of 30 minutes.

Note: *Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This damages the outlet and can blow the fuse.*

Note: *Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.*

Note: *Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 volt DC 180 watt or a fuse may blow.*

Note: *Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.*

Note: *Incorrect use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.*

Run the vehicle for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary after switching the vehicle off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when your vehicle is in park (P) for extended periods.

Location

You may find power points in the following locations:

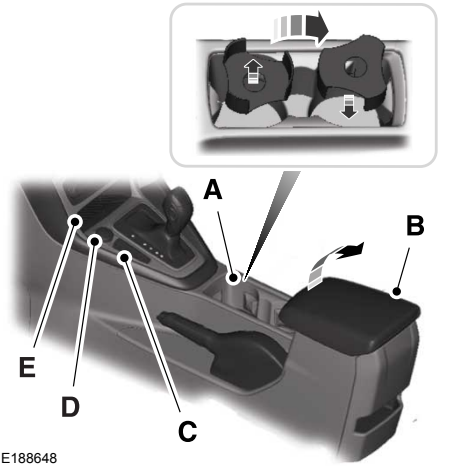
- On the center console
- In the center console.
- In the cargo area.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

CENTER CONSOLE

Stow items in the cupholder carefully as items may become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes, including hot drinks which may spill.

Available console features include:



E188648

A Cupholder with grips and height adjuster. To use, flip the removable inset piece.

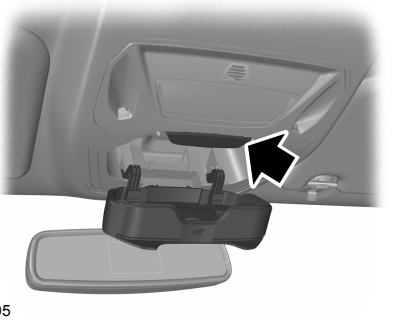
B Storage compartment with auxiliary power point and media hub.

C Parking aid, auto-start-stop and heated steering wheel controls.

D Auxiliary power point.

E USB port.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE



E131605

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

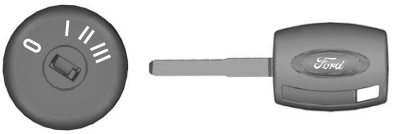
If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 5 miles (8 kilometers) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

The powertrain control system meets all Canadian interference-causing equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field or radio noise.

When you start the engine, avoid pressing the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E72128

0 (off) - The ignition is off.

Note: *When you switch the ignition off and leave your vehicle, do not leave your key in the ignition. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

I (accessory) - Allows the electrical accessories, such as the radio, to operate while the engine is not running.

Note: *Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long. This could cause your vehicle battery to lose charge.*

II (on) - All electrical circuits are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

III (start) - cranks the engine.

KEYLESS STARTING (If Equipped)

Note: *The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *The ignition automatically turns off if you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.*

Note: *A valid passive key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode



E142555

Press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the push button ignition switch again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to switch the ignition off.

Starting Your Vehicle

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the gearshift lever to park (P).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

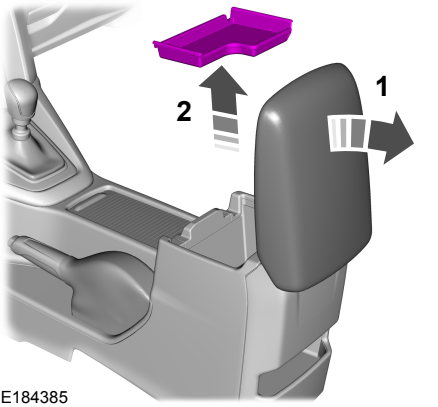
Note: *Releasing the brake pedal during engine starting stops the engine cranking.*

Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery has no charge.

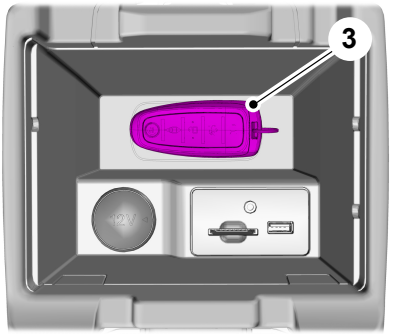
If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E184386

3. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the push button ignition switch is pressed, do the following:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine cranking. A message appears in the information display.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Briefly press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Move the gearshift lever to park (P).
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: *The ignition, all electrical circuits and all warning lamps and indicators will be turned off.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Move the gearshift lever to neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. With your vehicle stopped, move the gearshift lever to park (P) and switch the ignition off.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid passive key is not detected.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Once your vehicle starts, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

You cannot start your vehicle if you open the driver door and the system does not detect a valid passive key.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

When you start the engine, the idle speed increases. This helps to warm up the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Note: *You can crank the engine for a total of 60 seconds without the engine starting before the starting system temporarily disables. The 60 seconds does not have to be all at once. For example, if you crank the engine three times for 20 seconds each time, without the engine starting, you reached the 60-second time limit. A message appears in the information display alerting you that you exceeded the cranking time. You cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes. After 15 minutes, you are limited to a 15-second engine cranking time. You need to wait 60 minutes before you can crank the engine for 60 seconds again.*

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their safety belts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the transmission is in park (P).
- Switch the ignition key to position **II**. If your vehicle is equipped with a keyless ignition, see the following instructions.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
2. Turn the key to position **III** to start the engine.

Note: *The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.*

Note: *If you cannot start the engine on the first try, wait for a short period and try again.*

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *You must have your intelligent access key in your vehicle in order to shift the transmission out of park (P).*

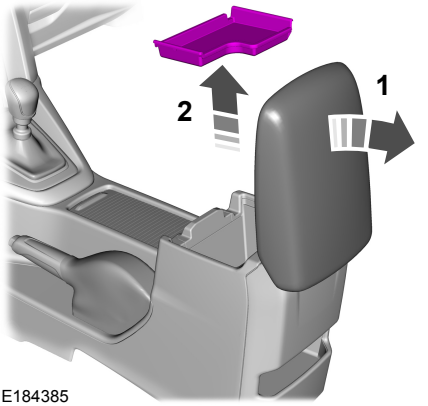
1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the push button ignition switch.

The system does not function if:

- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

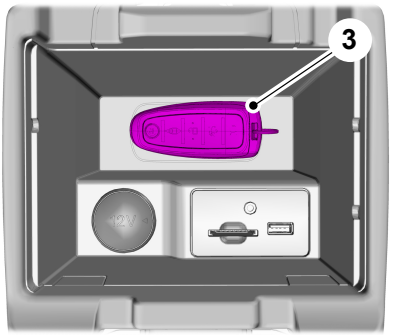
If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E184385

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.



E184386

3. Place the passive key flat on the symbol at the bottom of the floor console storage compartment.
4. With the passive key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart the engine within 20 seconds of switching it off, even if a valid key is not present.

Within 20 seconds of switching the engine off, press the brake pedal and press the button. After 20 seconds have expired, you can no longer restart your vehicle without the key present inside your vehicle.

Once your vehicle has started, it remains running until you press the button, even if the system does not detect a valid key. If you open and close a door while your vehicle is running, the system searches for a valid key. You cannot restart the engine if the system does not detect a valid key within 20 seconds.

Failure to Start

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow this procedure:

1. If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, fully press the brake pedal. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal and apply the handbrake.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

Automatic Engine Shutdown

For vehicles with a keyless ignition, this feature automatically shuts down the engine if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off in order to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

Automatic Engine Shutdown Override

Note: *You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.*

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- You can reset the timer by interacting with your vehicle (such as pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal).
- You can temporarily switch off the shutdown feature any time the ignition is on (for the current ignition cycle only). Use the information display to do so. See **Information Displays** (page 92).
- During the countdown before shutdown, you are prompted to press OK or RESET (depending on your type of information display) to temporarily switch the feature off (for the current ignition cycle only).

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Press the button once.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Note: *This switches off the ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators.*

Note: *If the engine is idling for 30 minutes, the ignition and engine automatically shut down.*

Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving

WARNING

Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not lock, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off, some electrical circuits, including air bags, warning lamps and indicators may also be off. If the ignition was turned off accidentally, you can shift into neutral (N) and re-start the engine.

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and turn the key to position **0**.
3. Apply the parking brake.

Vehicles with Keyless Start

1. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
2. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P).
3. Press and hold the button for one second, or press it three times within two seconds.
4. Apply the parking brake.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes

WARNING

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle checked by your authorized dealer immediately. Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust fumes. Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

Important Ventilating Information

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 1.0 in (2.5 cm).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or serious personal injury.

Do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged adapters. There is a risk of electrical shock.

Do not fully close the hood, or allow it to drop under its own weight when using the engine block heater. This could damage the power cable and may cause an electrical short resulting in fire, injury and property damage.

Note: *The heater is most effective when outdoor temperatures are below 0ºF (-18ºC).*

The heater acts as a starting aid by warming the engine coolant. This allows the climate control system to respond quickly. The equipment includes a heater element (installed in the engine block) and a wire harness. You can connect the system to a grounded 120-volt AC electrical source.

We recommend that you do the following for a safe and correct operation:

- Use a 16-gauge outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). This extension cord must be suitable for use outdoors, in cold temperatures, and be clearly marked Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances. Do not use an indoor extension cord outdoors. This could result in an electric shock or become a fire hazard.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug and heater cord plug connections are free and clear of water. This could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Make sure your vehicle is parked in a clean area, clear of combustibles.
- Make sure the heater, heater cord and extension cord are firmly connected.
- Check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately 30 minutes.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- Make sure the system is unplugged and properly stowed before starting and driving your vehicle. Make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the block heater cord plug when not in use.
- Make sure the heater system is checked for proper operation before winter.

Using the Engine Block Heater

Make sure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. Clean them with a dry cloth if necessary.

The heater uses 0.4 to 1.0 kilowatt-hours of energy per hour of use. The system does not have a thermostat. It achieves maximum temperature after approximately three hours of operation. Using the heater longer than three hours does not improve system performance and unnecessarily uses electricity.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

AUTO-START-STOP (If Equipped)

The system reduces fuel consumption and CO2 emissions by shutting down the engine when your vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights.

WARNINGS

The engine may restart automatically if required by the system.

Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or performing any maintenance. Failure to do so may result in serious injuries due to automatic engine restart.

Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have turned the engine off, but the ignition will still be on and automatic restart may occur.

Note: *The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine shuts down. See* ***Warning Lamps and Indicators*** *(page 88). It flashes amber with a message when the driver needs to shift to neutral or press a pedal. See* ***Information Messages*** *(page 96). If it illuminates grey, the system is not available.*



Using Auto-Start-Stop with a Manual Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch and accelerator pedal.

To Re-Start the Engine

Press the clutch pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the transmission selector lever to neutral and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.*

Note: *Auto-Start-Stop also comes with stall recovery. If you fully press the clutch pedal after stalling the engine, the engine automatically restarts.*

Using Auto-Start-Stop with an Automatic Transmission

To Stop the Engine

1. Stop your vehicle in drive (D).
2. Release the accelerator pedal.
3. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

Note: *If your vehicle is in an engine off Auto-Start-Stop state and you move the transmission to reverse (R) while the brake pedal is not pressed, a message will appear on your instrument cluster. Press the brake pedal within 10 seconds or you will need to shift to park (P). A manual restart will be required.*

Note: *If the Shift to P, Restart Engine message appears and the amber Auto-Start-Stop indicator flashes, automatic restart is not available. You must restart your vehicle manually.*

To Re-Start the Engine

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

Limitations of Use

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low engine operating temperature.
- To maintain the interior climate.
- The battery charge level is low.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- The driver door is opened.
- The driver safety belt is not fastened.
- The transmission is in Sport or Manual modes (automatic transmission only).

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate, for example air conditioning.
- The battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The driver safety belt is not fastened (automatic transmission only).
- The driver door is opened (automatic transmission only).
- The transmission is shifted out of drive (automatic transmission only).

Switching the System On and Off



When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

To switch the system off, press the switch and the word OFF illuminates. Press again to switch the system back on. The system only switches off for the current ignition cycle.

Note: *The system may not function if you leave electrical equipment connected with the ignition off.*

Note: *For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop, the battery requirement is different. Replace it with one of exactly the same specification as the original.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

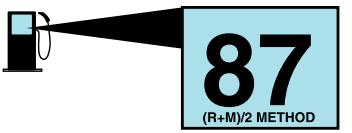
Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. If fuel is splashed on the skin, wash the affected areas immediately with plenty of soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience any adverse reactions.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

Choosing the Right Fuel



E161513

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 183).

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuel containing more than 15% ethanol or E85 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

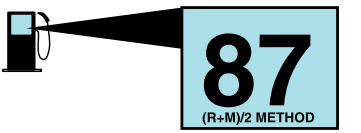
Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

FUEL QUALITY - E85 (If Equipped)

Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles

Flex fuel vehicles have one of the following identifiers:

- Yellow fuel filler cap.
- Yellow bezel around the fuel filler inlet.
- Yellow fuel filler housing.
- Yellow E85 label on the fuel tank filler door.



E161513

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Your vehicle is designed to operate on regular unleaded gasoline with a minimum pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87 or regular unleaded gasoline blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol (E85).

Some fuel stations, particularly those in high altitude areas, offer fuels posted as regular unleaded gasoline with an octane rating below 87. We do not recommend these fuels.

For best overall vehicle and engine performance, premium fuel with an octane rating of 91 or higher is recommended. The performance gained by using premium fuel is most noticeable in hot weather as well as other conditions, for example when towing a trailer. See **Towing** (page 183).

Do not use any fuel other than those recommended because they could lead to engine damage that will not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *Use of any fuel other than those recommended can impair the emission control system and cause a loss of vehicle performance.*

Do not use:

- Diesel fuel.
- Fuels containing kerosene or paraffin.
- Fuels containing more than 85% ethanol or E100 fuel.
- Fuels containing methanol.
- Fuels containing metallic-based additives, including manganese-based compounds.
- Fuels containing the octane booster additive, methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT).
- Leaded fuel (using leaded fuel is prohibited by law).

The use of fuels with metallic compounds such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (commonly known as MMT), which is a manganese-based fuel additive, will impair engine performance and affect the emission control system.

Do not be concerned if the engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if the engine knocks heavily while using fuel with the recommended octane rating, contact an authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

Switching Between E85 and Gasoline

We do not recommend repeatedly alternating between E85 and gasoline. If you switch from using E85 to gasoline, or from gasoline to E85, add as much fuel as possible, at least half a tank. Drive your vehicle immediately for a minimum of 5 mi (8 km) to allow it to adapt to the change in ethanol concentration. If you use E85 exclusively, we recommend that you fill the fuel tank with regular unleaded gasoline at each scheduled oil change.

FUEL FILLER FUNNEL LOCATION

The fuel filler funnel is located in the spare wheel storage tray.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Running out of fuel can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If your vehicle runs out of fuel:

- Add a minimum of 1.3 gal (5 L) of fuel to restart the engine. If your vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep slope, more fuel may be required.
- You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container

WARNINGS

Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel system filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.

Do not try to pry open or push open the capless fuel system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

WARNINGS

Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the plastic funnel included with your vehicle. See **Fuel Filler Funnel Location** (page 131).

Note: *Do not use aftermarket funnels as they will not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.*

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages and remove the fuel tank filler cap.

Note: *Capless fuel systems do not have a fuel tank filler cap.*

2. Fully insert the plastic funnel into the fuel tank filler pipe opening.


E157452

3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the plastic funnel from the fuel tank filler pipe opening.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

5. Replace the fuel tank filler cap and close the fuel tank filler door.
6. Clean the plastic funnel and place it back in your vehicle or properly dispose of it.

Note: *Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.*

REFUELING

WARNINGS

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.

Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle. This is against the law in some places.

Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- Do not fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- Do not use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

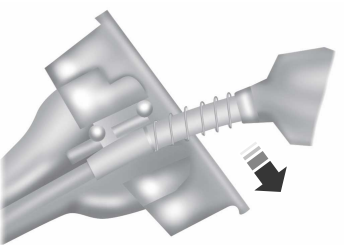
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System

WARNING

The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

When fueling your vehicle:

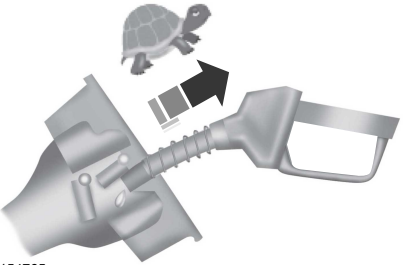
1. When your vehicle has stopped, shift into park (P) and switch the ignition off.
2. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.



E156032

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on the nozzle. Hold handle higher during insertion for easier access. Leave the fuel pump nozzle fully inserted until you are done pumping.



E154765

4. Remove the fuel filler nozzle and fully close the fuel tank filler door.

Note: *A fuel spillage concern may occur if overfilling the fuel tank. Do not overfill the tank. The fill pipe is equipped with a drain hole. Excess fuel due to overfill may drain through the drain hole and drip onto the ground.*

If the fuel fill inlet was not properly closed, a service engine warning lamp may appear on the instrument cluster.

At the next opportunity, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as safely possible and shift the transmission into park (P).
2. Switch the ignition off.
3. Open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening.
4. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to allow the inlet to close properly. This will dislodge any debris preventing the inlet from sealing.

If this action corrects the problem, the message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after 4 or more hours with the engine off) followed by city or highway driving. Continuing to drive with the message on may cause the service engine soon lamp to turn on as well.

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty. The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

- The usable capacity of the fuel tank is the amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty, before the first fuel filler nozzle automatic shutoff event.
- The advertised capacity is equal to the volumetric difference between actual fuel fill before the first fuel filler nozzle automatic shutoff event and the fuel quantity when the fuel gauge indicates empty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267). It is the usable capacity minus the empty reserve.
- Due to the empty reserve, you may be able to add more fuel than the advertised capacity of the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when refueling:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than one automatic shut-off when refueling.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Do not measure fuel economy during the first 1,000 mi (1,600 km) of driving (this is your engine's break-in period). A more accurate measurement is obtained after 2,000 mi (3,200 km) to 3,000 mi (4,800 km). Also, fuel expense, frequency of fill ups or fuel gauge readings are not accurate ways to measure fuel economy.

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading.
2. Each time you fill the fuel tank, record the amount of fuel added.
3. After at least three fill ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

To calculate L/100 km (liters per 100 kilometers) fuel consumption, multiply the liters used by 100, then divide by kilometers traveled. To calculate MPG (miles per gallon) fuel consumption, divide miles traveled by gallons used.

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This provides an accurate estimate of your vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy.

Conditions

- Heavily loading your vehicle reduces fuel economy.
- Carrying unnecessary weight in your vehicle may reduce fuel economy.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You will get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

WARNINGS

Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Your vehicle has various emission control components and a catalytic converter that enables it to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards.

To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in scheduled maintenance information are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If you use anything other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Illumination of the service engine soon indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your warranty information for complete details.

On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle has a computer known as the on-board diagnostics system (OBD-II) that monitors the engine's emission control system. The system protects the environment by making sure that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists a service technician in properly servicing your vehicle.



When the service engine soon indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the service engine soon indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. Your vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
3. The fuel fill inlet may not have closed properly. See **Refueling** (page 133).
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

You can correct these temporary malfunctions by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

present, the service engine soon indicator should stay off the next time you start the engine. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city and highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the service engine soon indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the service engine soon indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing

Some state and provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.



If the service engine soon indicator is on or the bulb does not work, your vehicle may need service. See On-Board Diagnostics.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the service engine soon indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the service engine soon indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the service engine soon indicator stays on solid, it means that your vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system checks the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days.

If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, you can perform the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving:

1. 15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway or highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.
2. Allow your vehicle to sit for at least eight hours with the ignition off. Then, start the vehicle and complete the above driving cycle. The vehicle must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the vehicle until the above driving cycle is complete.

If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, you need to repeat the above driving cycle.

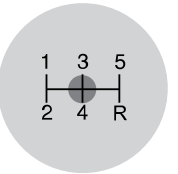
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 5-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (MTX-75)

Using the Clutch

Note: *Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.*

Note: *Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.*



E157512

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

Starting Your Vehicle

WARNING

Make sure the floor mat is positioned correctly so that it does not interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal then start the engine.
3. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to first or reverse gear.
4. Release the parking brake and slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, make sure you fully depress the clutch pedal.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: *Do not shift the gearshift lever to first gear when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.*

We recommend you change gear according to the following guide to achieve the best fuel economy for your vehicle.

Shift from	Recommended speed
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	24 mph (38 km/h)
3 - 4	32 mph (51 km/h)
4 - 5	44 mph (71 km/h)

Reverse

Note: *Do not shift the gearshift lever to reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal to disengage clutch.
2. Shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before moving it to reverse.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If reverse gear is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, depress the clutch again and shift the gearshift lever to reverse.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

Do not park your vehicle with the gearshift lever in the neutral position. Your vehicle may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Shift the gearshift lever to first gear and set the parking brake fully.

To park your vehicle:

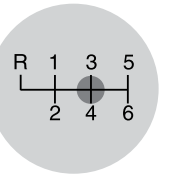
1. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Hold the clutch pedal down, and shift the gearshift lever to first gear.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION - 6-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION (MMT6)

Using the Clutch

Note: *Failure to fully press the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.*

Note: *Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.*



E144954

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully pressed.

To start your vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.
2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; first (1) or reverse (R).
5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully pressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: *Do not downshift into first (1) when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.*

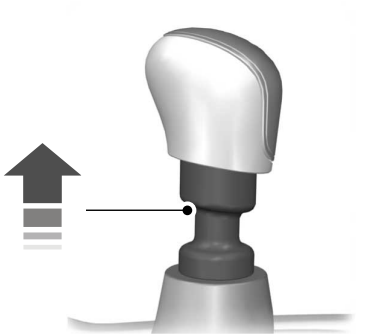
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Recommended upshifts (for best fuel economy) when accelerating	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	26 mph (42 km/h)
3 - 4	38 mph (61 km/h)
4 - 5	42 mph (67 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

Reverse

Note: *Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into reverse (R). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.*

1. Press the clutch pedal to the floor to disengage clutch.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the neutral position.
3. Shift into reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up, then moving the lever fully to the left, then forward.



E99067

Note: *The gearshift lever can only be moved to reverse (R) by raising the collar below the gearshift knob up before shifting to reverse. This is a lockout feature which protects the transmission from accidentally engaging reverse (R) when intending to select first (1).*

If reverse (R) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then raise the collar and shift to reverse (R) again.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING

Do not park your vehicle with the gearshift lever in the neutral position. Your vehicle may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Shift the gearshift lever to first gear and set the parking brake fully.

To park your vehicle:

1. Press the brake pedal and shift the gearshift lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
3. Hold the clutch pedal down and shift the gearshift lever to first gear.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

Always set the parking brake fully and latch the gearshift in park (P). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than three seconds will limit engine rpm, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

The PowerShift™ 6-speed, dual-clutch automatic transmission is designed to offer drivers both enhanced fuel efficiency and fun to drive performance. This transmission's dual-clutch technology uses electronically shifted clutches to operate two separate transmissions all in a small lightweight package.

Since the clutch and gear operation is derived from a manual transmission, the PowerShift automatic transmission will drive, sound, and feel similar to manual transmission minus the required user-inputs. For example, the transmission may exhibit mechanical noises, firm gear shifts and/or light clutch vibrations when accelerating slowly as the clutches automatically engage. These are all considered to be normal and expected driving characteristics.

Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission

Putting your vehicle in gear:

1. Fully press down the brake pedal.
2. Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. Come to a complete stop.
4. Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).



E142628

Park (P)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the wheels from turning.

Reverse (R)

With the gearshift lever in reverse (R), your vehicle moves backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of reverse (R).

Neutral (N)

With the gearshift lever in neutral (N), your vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through six.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Sport (S)

Moving the gearshift lever to sport (S):

- Provides additional grade (engine) braking and extends lower gear operation to enhance performance for uphill climbs, hilly terrain or mountainous areas. This increases engine RPM during engine braking.
- Provides additional lower gear operation through the automatic transmission shift strategy.
- Gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission (If Equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a SelectShift Automatic transmission gearshift lever. The SelectShift Automatic transmission gives you the ability to change gears up or down (without a clutch) as desired.

In order to prevent the engine from running at too low an RPM, which may cause it to stall, SelectShift still automatically makes some downshifts if it has determined that you have not downshifted in time. Although SelectShift makes some downshifts for you, it still allows you to downshift at any time as long as the SelectShift determines that damage will not be caused to the engine from over-revving.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit. It must be shifted manually by pressing the + button.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever:

- Press the (+) button to upshift.
- Press the (-) button to downshift.



E142629

If equipped with steering wheel paddles:

With your vehicle in drive (D), the paddle shifters provide temporary manual control. They allow you the ability to shift gears quickly, without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

You can achieve extensive manual control by moving the gearshift lever to the sport (S) position.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (–) to downshift.



E144821

The system determines when temporary manual control is no longer in use and returns to automatic control.

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	15 mph (24 km/h)
2 - 3	25 mph (40 km/h)
3 - 4	40 mph (64 km/h)
4 - 5	45 mph (72 km/h)
5 - 6	50 mph (80 km/h)

The instrument cluster displays your currently selected gear.

Note: *The system stays in manual control until you make another shift selection (for example, drive [D]).*

Brake-Shift Interlock

WARNINGS

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

When doing this procedure, you will be taking your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully set the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheel chocks if appropriate.

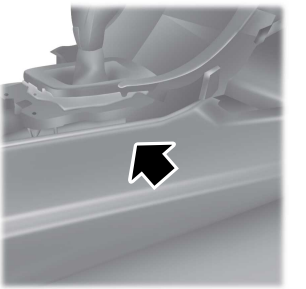
If you fully release the parking brake and the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Note: *For some markets this feature will be disabled.*

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is in the on position and the brake pedal is not pressed.

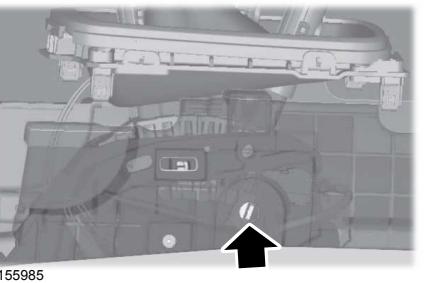
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 202).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P):



E155984

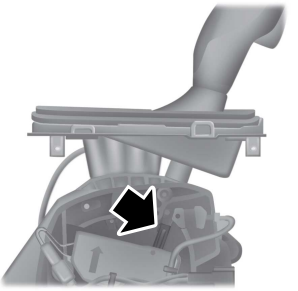
1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.



E155985

2. Locate the access hole.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


E155983

3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever foreword while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have it checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See* ***Cleaning the Wheels*** *(page 240).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*



See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 88).

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake rapidly by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal, and can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System

This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.



This lamp momentarily illuminates when you turn the ignition on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the system may be disabled. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. If the anti-lock brake system is disabled, normal braking is still effective.



If the brake warning lamp illuminates when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

Note: *When the system is operating, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.*

The anti-lock braking system will not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

WARNING

Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.*

Note: *If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.*

All Vehicles

Note: *Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.*

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST

WARNINGS

The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.

You must remain in your vehicle once you have activated the system.

During all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

If the engine is revved excessively, or if a malfunction is detected, the system will be deactivated.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, your vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for two to three seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The system will activate automatically on any slope that will cause significant vehicle rollback. For vehicles with a manual transmission, you can switch this feature off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 92). The system will remain on or off depending on how it was last set.

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and select an uphill gear (for example, first (1) when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill).
2. If the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope, the system will activate automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for about two or three seconds. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will release automatically.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

You cannot turn the system on or off. When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically turns on.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

WARNING

The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily if the system detects a failure. Make sure you did not manually disable the traction control system using the information display controls or the switch. If the stability control and traction control light is still illuminating steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Note: *When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.*

Switching the System Off

When you switch the system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

You can switch the system off by either using the information display controls or the switch.

Using the Information Display Controls

You can switch this feature off or on in the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

Using a Switch (If Equipped)

Use the traction control switch on the instrument panel to switch the system off or on.

System Indicator Lights and Messages



The stability and traction control light:

- Temporarily illuminates on engine start-up.
- Flashes when a driving condition activates either of the systems.
- Illuminates if a problem occurs in either of the systems.



The stability and traction control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you switch the traction control system off.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the electronic stability control sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your electronic stability control system activates, SLOW DOWN.

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.
- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

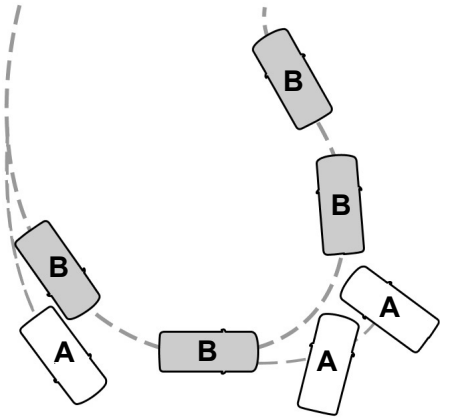
Electronic Stability Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Traction Control

The system enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **Using Traction Control** (page 148).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E72903

A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.

B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

You cannot switch the stability control system off, but when you shift into reverse (R), the system deactivates.

You can switch the traction control system off or on. See **Using Traction Control** (page 148).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the system as contained in this section. Sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving on a flat surface at parking speeds. Certain objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves, surrounding vehicle's parking aid systems, traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, and external motors and fans may also affect the function of the sensing system. This may include reduced performance or a false activation.

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

Only use the Ford approved trailer wiring kit (including the trailer wiring module) when towing with your vehicle. Using generic trailer wiring kits may prevent the correct operation of the rear parking sensors (where fitted) and could damage the electrical systems of your vehicle.

The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause interference.

The parking aid system may not prevent contact with small or moving objects that are close to the ground. The parking aid system gives an audible warning when it detects a large object helping to avoid damage to your vehicle. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.

Note: *If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 8 in (20 cm).*

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow ball arm, the system is turned off automatically when trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket through a Ford approved trailer tow module.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice or snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.*

Note: *The system may emit false alerts if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if your vehicle is fully loaded.*

Note: *The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensors and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the alert will turn off. As you continue the inner sensors will detect objects directly behind your vehicle.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measure of obstacles or false alerts.*

REAR PARKING AID

The rear parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R).

As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) away, the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects an object farther than 12 in (30 cm) from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. If the system detects an approaching object the warning sounds again.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E130178

Coverage area of up to 6 ft (1.8 m) from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.

The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R) :

- Your vehicle is moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) or less.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h).

FRONT PARKING AID (If Equipped)

The front sensors are active when the transmission is any position other than park (P).



E187330

Coverage area of up to 28 in (70 cm) from the front bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When your vehicle approaches an object, a warning tone sounds. When your vehicle moves closer to an object, the warning tone repeat rate increases. The warning tone sounds continuously when an object is 12 in (30 cm) or less from the front bumper.

Obstacle Distance Indicator (If Equipped)

The system provides obstacle distance indication through the information display.

The indicator displays:

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks are greyed out.

If the transmission is in reverse (R), the front sensing system provides audio warnings when your vehicle is moving and the detected obstacle is moving towards your vehicle. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If the transmission is in drive (D) or any other forward gear (for example, low (L), sport (S) or any forward gear in a manual transmission), the front sensing system provides audio and visual warnings when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 7 mph (12 km/h) and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once the vehicle is stationary, the audio warning will be stopped after 2 seconds and the visual indication stops after 4 seconds. If the obstacles detected are within 12 in (30 cm), the visual indication remains on.

If the transmission is in neutral (N), the system provides visual indication only when your vehicle is moving at 7 mph (12 km/h) or below and an obstacle is located inside the detection area. Once your vehicle is stationary, the visual indication will stop after 4 seconds.

ACTIVE PARK ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

Designed to be a supplementary park aid, this system may not work in all conditions. This system cannot replace the driver's attention and judgment. The driver is responsible for avoiding hazards and maintaining a safe distance and speed, even when the system is in use.

Active Park Assist does not apply the brakes under any circumstances.

Note: *The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.*

Active Park Assist is an electronic parking aid that uses ultrasonic sensors. The system detects an available parallel parking space and automatically steers your vehicle into the space (hands-free) while you control the accelerator, gearshift and brakes. The system visually and audibly instructs you to park your vehicle.

The system may not function correctly if something passes between the front bumper and the parking space (a pedestrian or cyclist) or if the edge of the neighboring parked vehicle is high off the ground (for example, a bus, tow truck or flatbed truck).

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain, snow or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.*

Note: *Keep the sensors, located on the bumper or fascia, free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Covered sensors can affect the system's accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.*

Do not use the system if:

- You have attached a foreign object (bike rack or trailer) to the front or rear of your vehicle or close to the sensors.
- You have attached an overhanging object (surfboard) to the roof.
- A foreign object damages or obstructs the sensors.
- The correct tire size is not in use on your vehicle (for example, a mini-spare tire).

Using Active Park Assist



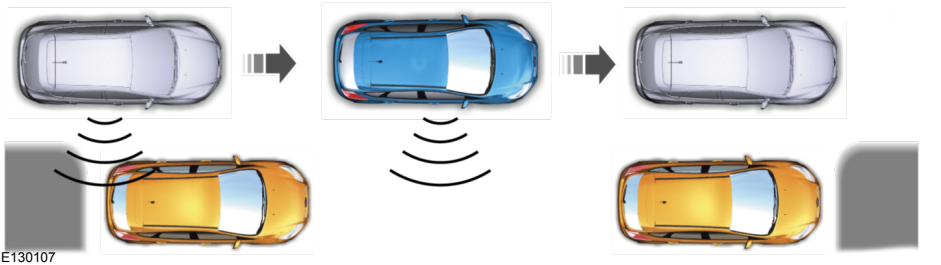
Press the button located on the center console near the gearshift lever.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The touchscreen displays a message and a corresponding graphic to indicate it is searching for a parking space. Use the direction indicator to indicate which side of your vehicle you want the system to search.

Note: *The system automatically searches on the passenger side. You can use the direction indicator to toggle between the driver and passenger side.*

Note: *You can also activate the Active Park Assist system after you have already driven partially or completely past a parking space. To do so, press the Active Park button and the system will inform you if you have recently passed a suitable parking space.*


E130107

When the system finds a suitable space, the touchscreen displays a message and a tone sounds. Stop your vehicle and follow the instructions on the touchscreen. If your vehicle is moving very slowly, you may need to pull forward a short distance before the system is ready to park.

Note: *You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the maneuver.*

Note: *Active park assist may not detect vehicles with overhanging loads (a bus or a truck), street furniture such as benches and fire hydrants and other items. You must make sure the selected space is suitable for parking.*

Note: *You should drive your vehicle within 5 ft (1.5 m) and as parallel to the other vehicles as possible while passing a parking space.*

Note: *The system always offers the last detected parking space (for example, if the vehicle detects multiple spaces while you are driving, it offers the last one).*

Note: *If driven above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h), the touchscreen shows a message to alert you to reduce your vehicle speed.*

Automatic Steering into Parking Space

Note: *If your vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (9 km/h), the system turns off and you need to take full control of your vehicle.*

When you shift the transmission into reverse (R), with your hands off the wheel (and nothing obstructing its movement), your vehicle steers itself into the space. Indicated by tones, instructions to move your vehicle back and forth in the space appear on the display screen.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



When you think your vehicle is properly parked, or you hear a solid tone from the parking aid (accompanied by a touchscreen display message and a chime), bring your vehicle to a complete stop.

When automatic steering is finished, the touch screen displays a message and a tone sounds, indicating that the active park assist process is done. The driver is responsible for checking the parking job and making any necessary corrections before putting the transmission in park (P).

Deactivating the Park Assist Feature

Manually deactivate the system by:

- Pressing the active park assist button.
- Grabbing the steering wheel during automatic steering.
- Driving above approximately 22 mph (35 km/h) for 30 seconds during an active park search.
- Driving above 6 mph (9 km/h) during automatic steering.
- Turning off the traction control system.

Certain vehicle conditions can also deactivate the system, such as:

- Traction control has activated on a slippery or loose surface.
- There is an anti-lock brake system activation or failure.

If a problem occurs with the system, a warning message displays, followed by a tone. Occasional system messages may occur in normal operation. For recurring or frequent system faults, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle serviced.

Troubleshooting the System

The system does not look for a space
The traction control system may be off.
The transmission is in reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space.
You recently disconnected or replaced the battery. After a battery disconnect, you must drive your vehicle for a short period of time before Active Park Assist becomes functional.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The system does not offer a particular space
Something may be contacting the sensors.
There is not enough room in the parking space for the vehicle to safely park.
There is not enough space for the parking maneuver on the opposite side of the parking space.
Your vehicle is farther than 4.9 ft (1.5 m) from the parking space.
Your vehicle is closer than 16 in (40 cm) from neighboring parked vehicles.
The transmission is in reverse (R); your vehicle must be moving forward to detect a parking space.
Your vehicle is going faster than 22 mph (35 km/h).

The system does not position the vehicle where I want in the space
Your vehicle is rolling in the opposite direction of the transmission (rolling forward with reverse (R) selected).
An irregular curb along the parking space prevents the system from aligning your vehicle properly.
Vehicles or objects bordering the space may not be positioned correctly.
You pulled your vehicle too far past the parking space. The system performs best when you drive the same distance past the parking space.
The tires may not be installed or maintained correctly (not inflated correctly, improper size, or of different sizes).
A repair or alteration has changed detection capabilities.
A parked vehicle has a high attachment (salt sprayer, snowplow or moving truck bed).
The parking space length or position of parked objects changed after your vehicle passed.
The temperature around your vehicle changes quickly (driving from a heated garage into the cold, or after leaving a car wash).
You didn't wait for the steering wheel to complete its rotation after a gear change. The system performs best when the steering wheel is allowed to finish rotating before accelerating.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

REAR VIEW CAMERA

WARNINGS

The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Back up as slow as possible since higher speeds might limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.

Use caution when using the rear video camera and the luggage compartment door is ajar. If the luggage compartment door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image may be incorrect. All guidelines disappear when the luggage compartment door is ajar.

Use caution when turning camera features on or off. Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.



E142435

The camera is located on the luggage compartment door.

Using the Rear View Camera System

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 7 mph (12 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features display.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

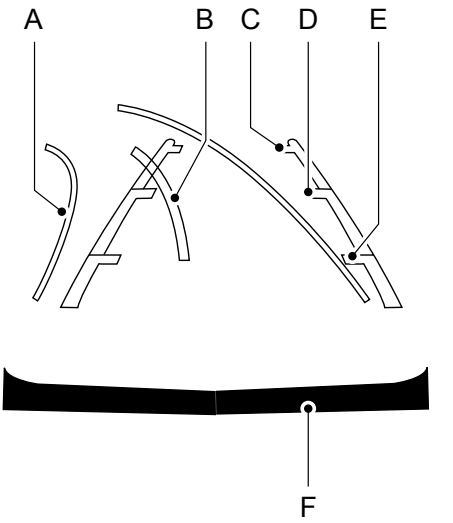
Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what is towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- Mud, water or debris obstructs the camera's view. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

Camera Guidelines

Note: *Active guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



E142436

A	Active guidelines
B	Centerline
C	Fixed guideline: Green zone
D	Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
E	Fixed guideline: Red zone
F	Rear bumper

Active guidelines only show with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: *Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*

Note: *When you enable manual zoom, only the centerline is shown.*

Selectable settings for this feature are Zoom in (+) and Zoom out (-). Press the symbol in the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is Zoom OFF.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Camera System Settings

To access any of the rear view camera system settings, make the following selections in the multifunctional display when the transmission is not in reverse (R):

- With Touch Screen: Settings > Vehicle > Camera Settings
- Without Touch Screen: Menu > Camera Settings

Enhanced Park Aids or Park Pilot (If Equipped)

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The system uses red, yellow and green highlights that appear on top of the video image when any of the sensing systems detect an object.

Rear Camera Delay

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

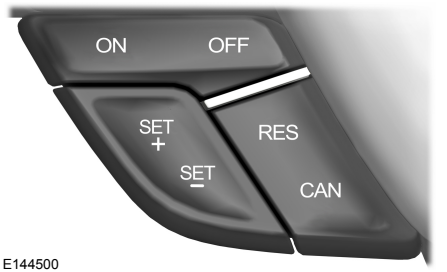
Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. You can use cruise control when your vehicle speed is greater than 20 mph (30 km/h).

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS

Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning displays.



E144500

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release ***ON***.



The indicator appears in the instrument cluster.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release ***SET+***.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: *The indicator will change color.*

Note: *Cruise control will disengage if the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set speed while driving uphill.*

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the Information display the set speed changes in approximately 2 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release ***RES***.

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release ***OFF*** when the system is in stand by mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

DRIVER ALERT (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.

Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

Note: *Keep the windshield free from obstructions for example bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

Note: *If the camera is blocked or if the windshield is damaged, the system may not function.*

Note: *The system will store the on or off setting in the information display menu through ignition cycles.*

Note: *If enabled in the menu, the system will be active at speeds above 40 mph (64 km/h). When below the activation speed, the information display will inform the driver that the system is unavailable.*

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that your driving alertness is reduced below a certain threshold, the system will alert you using a chime and a message in the cluster display.

USING DRIVER ALERT

Switching the System On and Off

Switch the system on or off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

When activated, the system will monitor your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

System Warnings

Note: *The system will not issue warnings below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h).*

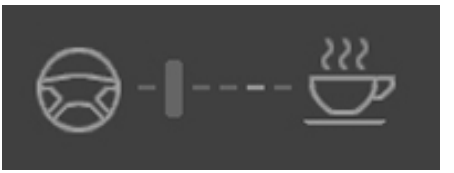
The warning system has two stages. At first, the system issues a temporary warning that you need to take a rest. This message will only appear for a short time. If the system detects further reduction in driving alertness, it may issue another warning that will remain in the information display for a longer time. You can press OK on the steering wheel control to clear the warning.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

System Display

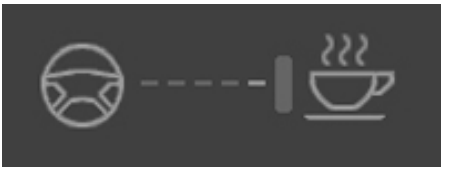
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue a warning if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 92).

The alertness level is shown by six steps in a colored bar.



E131358

The current assessment of your alertness is within a typical range.



E131359

The current assessment of your alertness indicates that you should rest as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow to red.

The yellow position indicates the first warning is active and the red position indicates the second warning is active.

Note: *If you have recently received a warning; you should consider resting, even if the current assessment is within the typical range.*

Note: *If the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if your vehicle speed drops below approximately 40 mph (64 km/h), the alertness level will change to grey for a short time and the information display will inform you that the system is unavailable.*

Resetting the System

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

Always drive with due care and attention when using and operating the controls and features on your vehicle.

At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system works above 40 mph (64 km/h).*

Note: *The system works as long as the camera can detect one lane marking.*

Note: *The system may not function if the camera is blocked or there is damage to the windshield.*

Note: *When Aid mode is on and the system detects no steering activity for a short period, the system will alert you to put your hands on the steering wheel. The system may detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands off driving.*

The system notifies you to stay in your lane through the steering system and the instrument cluster display when the front camera detects an unintentional drift out of your lane is likely to occur. The system automatically detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior rear view mirror.

Switching the System On and Off

Note: *The system on or off setting is stored until it is manually changed, unless a MyKey is detected. If the system detects a MyKey it defaults to on and the mode is set to Alert.*

Note: *If a MyKey is detected, pressing the button will not affect the on or off status of the system.*

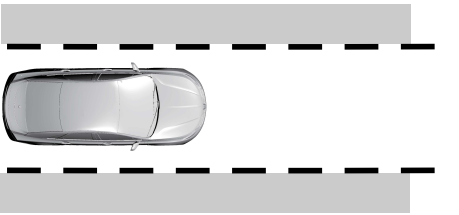


Press the button on the steering wheel stalk to switch the system on or off.

System Settings

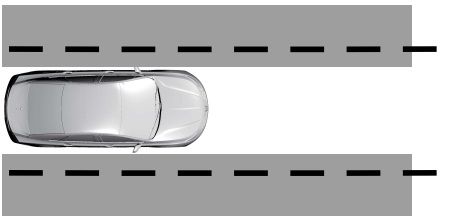
The system has optional setting menus available. The system stores the last-known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you turn on the system.

Mode: This setting allows you to select which of the system features you can enable.



E165515

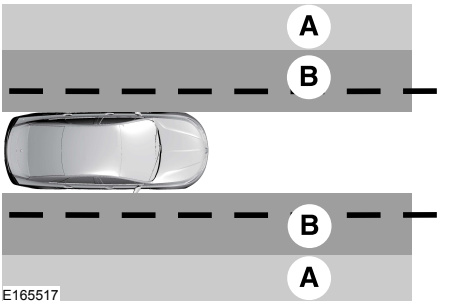
Alert only – Provides a steering wheel vibration when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



E165516

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Aid only – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure.



A Alert
B Aid

Alert + Aid – Provides an assistance steering torque input toward the lane center. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the system provides a steering wheel vibration.

Note: *The alert and aid diagrams illustrate general zone coverage. They do not provide exact zone parameters.*

Intensity: This setting affects the intensity of the steering wheel vibration used for the alert and alert + aid modes. This setting does not affect the aid mode.

- Low
- Normal
- High

System Display


E151660

When you switch on the system, an overhead graphic of a vehicle with lane markings will display in the information display. If you select aid mode when you switch on the system, a separate white icon will also appear or in some vehicles arrows will display with the lane markings.

When you switch off the system, the lane marking graphics will not display.

While the system is on, the color of the lane markings will change to indicate the system status.

Gray: Indicates that the system is temporarily unable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side(s). This may be because:

- Your vehicle is under the activation speed.
- The turn indicator is active.
- Your vehicle is in a dynamic maneuver.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- The road has no or poor lane markings in the camera field-of-view.
- The camera is obscured or unable to detect the lane markings due to environmental conditions (significant sun angles, shadows, snow, heavy rain or fog), traffic conditions (following a large vehicle that is blocking or shadowing the lane), or vehicle conditions (poor headlamp illumination).

See **Troubleshooting** for additional information.

Green: Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention, on the indicated side(s).

Yellow: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.

Red: Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

The system can be temporarily suppressed at any time by the following:

- Quick braking.
- Fast acceleration.
- Using the turn signal indicator.
- Evasive steering maneuver.

Troubleshooting

Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Vehicle speed is outside the operational range of the feature
Sun is shining directly into the camera lens
Quick intentional lane change
Staying too close to the lane marking
Driving at high speeds in curves
The last Alert warning or Aid intervention occurred a short time ago
Ambiguous lane markings (mainly in construction zones)
Rapid transition from light to dark or vice versa
Sudden offset in lane markings
ABS or AdvanceTrac activation
Camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield
Driving too close to the vehicle in front of you
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings or vice versa
Standing water on the road
Faint lane markings (partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads)

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

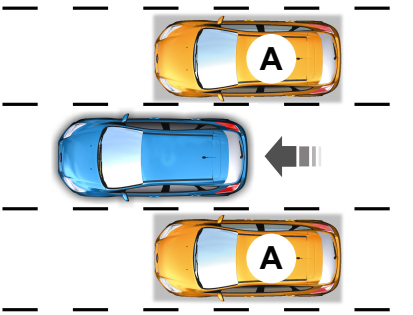
Why is the feature not available (line markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Lane width too narrow or too wide
Camera not calibrated after a windshield replacement
Driving on tight roads or on uneven roads

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid or Aid + Alert mode?
High cross winds
Large road crown
Rough roads, grooves, shoulder drop-offs
Heavy uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure
If the tires have been exchanged (including snow tires), or the suspension has been modified

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

WARNING

To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.



E124788

The Blind Spot Information System is designed to aid you in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 13 ft (4 m) beyond the bumper. The system is designed to alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone while driving.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not prevent contact with other vehicles or objects; nor detect parked vehicles, people, animals or infrastructure (fences, guardrails, trees). It's only designed to alert you to vehicles in the blind spot zones.*

Note: *When a vehicle passes quickly through the blind spot zone, typically fewer than two seconds, the system does not trigger.*

Using the System

The Blind Spot Information System turns on when you start the engine and you drive your vehicle forward above 5 mph (8 km/h).

For automatic transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System remains on while the transmission is in drive (D). If shifted into reverse (R) or park (P) the Blind Spot Information System turns off. Once shifted back into drive (D), the Blind Spot Information System turns back on when you drive your vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h).

For manual transmissions, the Blind Spot Information System is on for all gears except the reverse (R).

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System does not function in reverse (R) or park (P).*

System Lights and Messages



E142442

The Blind Spot Information System illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. When the Blind Spot Information System is alerting on a vehicle and the corresponding turn signal is ON, the Blind Spot Information System alert indicator flashes as an increased warning level.

The alert indicator dims when the system detects nighttime darkness.

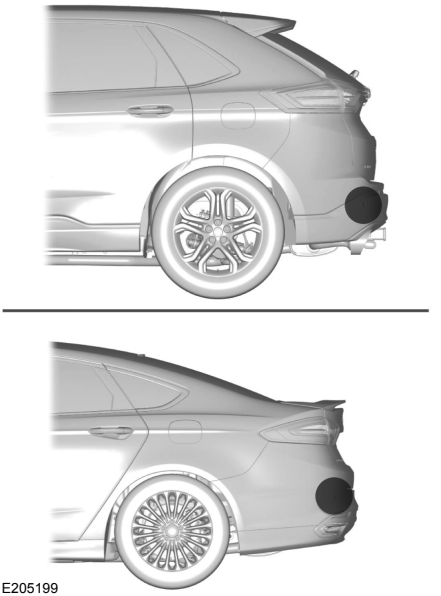
Note: *The alert indicator flashes in case of an alert and the turn signal is set to that side at the same time.*

System Sensor Blockage

WARNING

To help avoid injuries, NEVER use the Blind Spot Information System as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The Blind Spot Information System is not a replacement for careful driving.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Any dirt, mud and snow in front of the sensors and/or driving in heavy rain can cause system degradation. Also, other types of obstructions in front of the sensor can cause system degradation. This is referred to as a 'blocked' condition.

Note: *Do not apply bumper stickers and/or repair compound to these areas, this can cause degraded system performance.*

If the system detects a degraded performance condition, a message warning of a blocked sensor will appear in the information display. Also the BLIS alert indicators will remain ON and BLIS will no longer provide any vehicle warnings. You can clear the information display warning but the alert indicators will remain illuminated.

A "blocked" condition can be cleared in two ways:

- After the blockage in front of the sensors is removed or the rainfall/snowfall rate decreases or stops, drive for a few minutes in traffic to allow the sensors to detect passing vehicles.
- By cycling the ignition from ON to OFF and then back ON.

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Blind Spot Information System off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Blind Spot Information System off manually. Operating the Blind Spot Information System with a trailer attached will cause poor system performance.*

System Errors

If the system senses a problem with the left or right sensor, the telltale will illuminate and a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch the Blind Spot Information System off in the information display. See **General Information** (page 92). When the Blind Spot Information System switches off, you will not receive alerts and the information display shows a system off message. The telltale in the cluster also illuminates. When you switch the Blind Spot Information System on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: *The Blind Spot Information System remembers the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have the Blind Spot Information System switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

WARNING

To help avoid personal injury, NEVER use the Cross Traffic Alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors and looking over your shoulder before backing out of a parking space. Cross Traffic Alert is not a replacement for careful driving.

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to warn you of vehicles approaching from the sides when the transmission is in reverse (R).

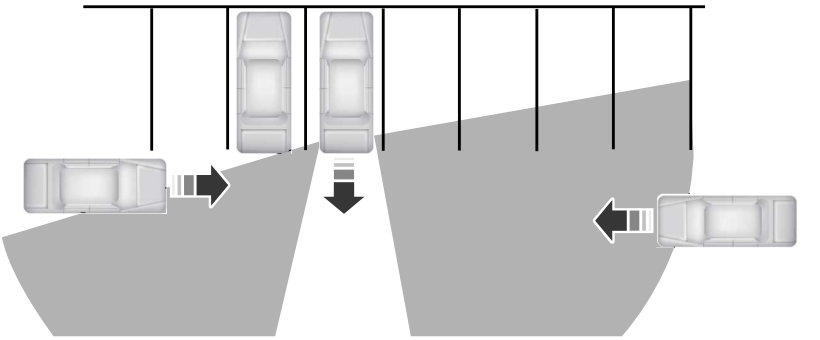
Using the System

Cross Traffic Alert turns on when you start the engine and you shift into reverse (R). Once shifted out of reverse (R), Cross Traffic Alert turns off.

Note: *Cross Traffic Alert only functions while your transmission is in reverse (R).*

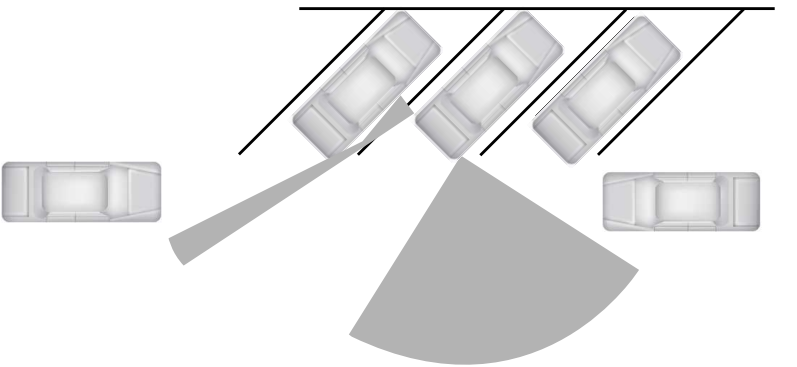
Cross Traffic Alert is designed to detect vehicles that approach with a speed up to 37 mph (60 km/h). Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed. Reversing slowly helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142440

In this first example, the left sensor is only partially obstructed; zone coverage to the right is nearly maximized.



E142441

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

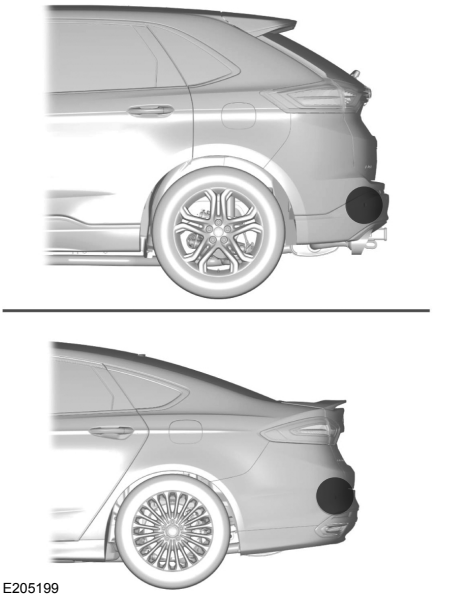
Zone coverage also decreases when parking at shallow angles. Here, the left sensor is mostly obstructed; zone coverage on that side is severely limited.

System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts



E142442

The Cross Traffic Alert illuminates an amber alert indicator in the outside mirror on the side of your vehicle the approaching vehicle is coming from. Cross Traffic Alert also sounds an audible alert and a message appears in the information display indicating a vehicle is coming from the right or left. Cross Traffic Alert works with the reverse sensing system that sounds its own series of tones. See **Rear Parking Aid** (page 151).



E205199

The system uses radar sensors that are located behind the bumper fascia on each side of your vehicle. Do not allow mud, snow or bumper stickers to obstruct these areas, this can cause degraded system performance. See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 166). If the Blind Spot Information System is blocked, Cross Traffic Alert is also blocked. A corresponding message appears in the information display as soon as you shift the transmission into reverse (R).

System Limitations

Cross Traffic Alert has its limitations; situations such as severe weather conditions or debris build-up on the sensor area may limit vehicle detection.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The following are other situations that may limit the Cross Traffic Alert performance:

- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects obstructing the sensors.
- Approaching vehicles passing at speeds greater than 37 mph (60 km/h).
- Driving in reverse faster than 7 mph (12 km/h).
- Backing out of an angled parking spot.

False Alerts

Note: *If your vehicle has a tow bar with a factory equipped trailer tow module and it is towing a trailer, the sensors will automatically turn the Cross Traffic Alert off. If your vehicle has a tow bar but no factory equipped trailer tow module, it is recommended to turn the Cross Traffic Alert off manually. Operating Cross Traffic Alert with a trailer attached will cause poor Cross Traffic Alert performance.*

There may be certain instances when there is a false alert by the Cross Traffic Alert system that illuminates the alert indicator with no vehicle in the coverage zone. Some amount of false alerts are normal; they are temporary and self-correct.

System Errors

If Cross Traffic Alert senses a problem with the left or right sensor a message will appear in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96).

Switching the System Off and On

You can temporarily switch Cross Traffic Alert off in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 96). When you switch Cross Traffic Alert off, you will not receive alerts and the information display will display a system off message.

Note: *The Cross Traffic Alert switches on whenever the ignition is switched on and ready to provide appropriate alerts when the transmission is in reverse (R). Cross Traffic Alert will not remember the last selected on or off setting.*

You can also have Cross Traffic Alert switched off permanently at an authorized dealer. Once switched off permanently, the system can only be switched back on at an authorized dealer.

ECO MODE

This system assists you in driving more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds while driving.

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your vehicle's overall fuel economy.

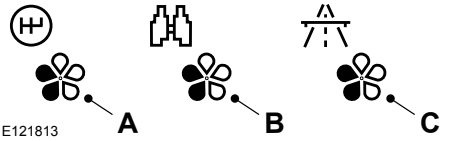
Note: *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving habits, but also influenced by many other factors such as short trips and cold starts.*

Note: *Frequent short trips, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption*

The system is accessed using the information display control. See **General Information** (page 92).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Type 1



A Gear shifting
B Anticipation
C Efficient speed

Gear shifting

Use the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions to improve fuel consumption.

Anticipation

Adjust your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles to avoid the need for heavy braking or acceleration to improve fuel economy.

Efficient speed

Reduce your cruising speed on open roads to improve economy. Higher speeds use more fuel.

Resetting Eco Mode

Reset the average fuel consumption by using the information display control.

Note: *New values may take a short time to calculate*

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS

The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Obtain immediate service from an authorized dealer, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Your vehicle has an electric power steering system. There is no fluid reservoir. No maintenance is required.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving, electric power steering assistance is lost. The steering system still operates and you can steer your vehicle manually. Manually steering your vehicle requires more effort.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort required for you to steer your vehicle. This increased effort prevents overheating and permanent damage to the steering system. You do not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually. Typical steering and driving maneuvers allow the system to cool and return to normal operation.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- Correct tire pressures.
- Uneven tire wear.
- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Loose or worn steering components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: *A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.*

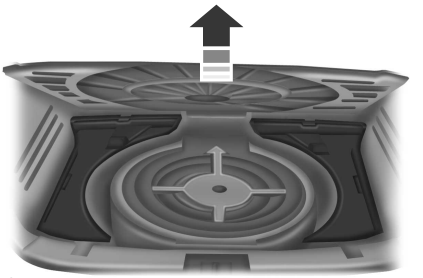
Adaptive Learning

The electronic power steering system adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering feel. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

Cargo Management System (If Equipped)


E142445

The system is located in the floor of the cargo area. Lift the handle to open.

LUGGAGE COVERS

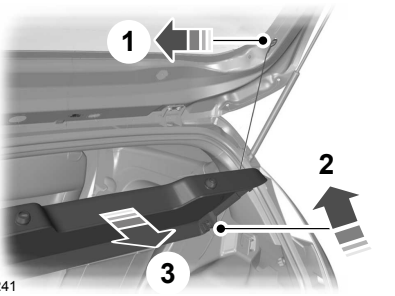
WARNINGS

Make sure that the posts are properly latched in the mounting features. The luggage cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or crash if it is not securely installed.

Do not place any objects on the luggage cover. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of your vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or crash.

You can remove the luggage cover to load tall items in the cargo area.

Removing the Cover



E174241

Note: *You must repeat the steps on both sides of your vehicle.*

1. Open the liftgate and disconnect the tether by pulling it out.
2. Rotate the luggage cover upward.
3. Tap the bottom of the luggage cover upward near the pivot rod.

Reverse the steps to install the luggage cover.

LOAD LIMIT

Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer

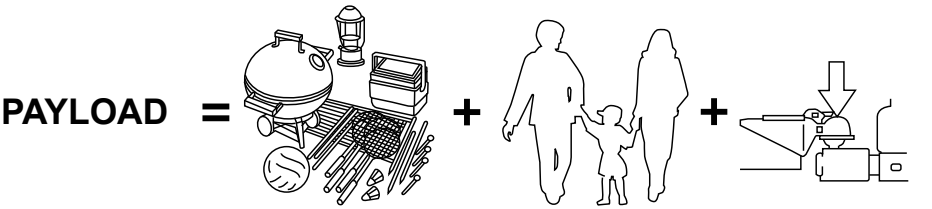
This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle, trailer or both, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight - is the weight of the vehicle including full fluids and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight - is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.



E143816

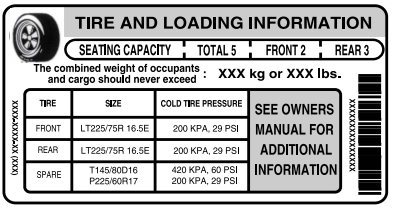
Payload - is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If you install any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment on the vehicle, you must subtract the weight of the equipment from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

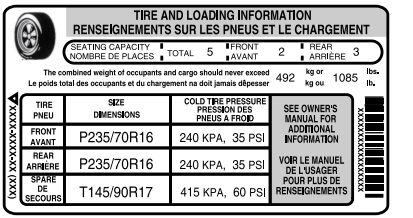
WARNING

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

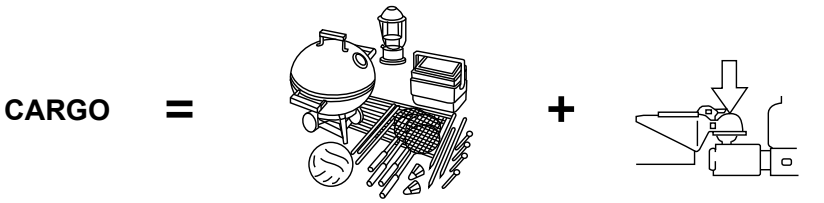
Example only:



E210944



E210945



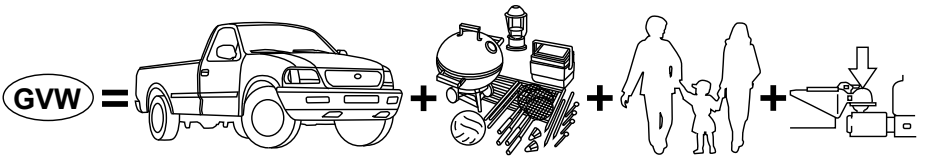
E143817

Cargo Weight - includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) - is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The total load on each axle must never exceed its Gross Axle Weight Rating.**

Note: *For trailer towing information refer to the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer.*



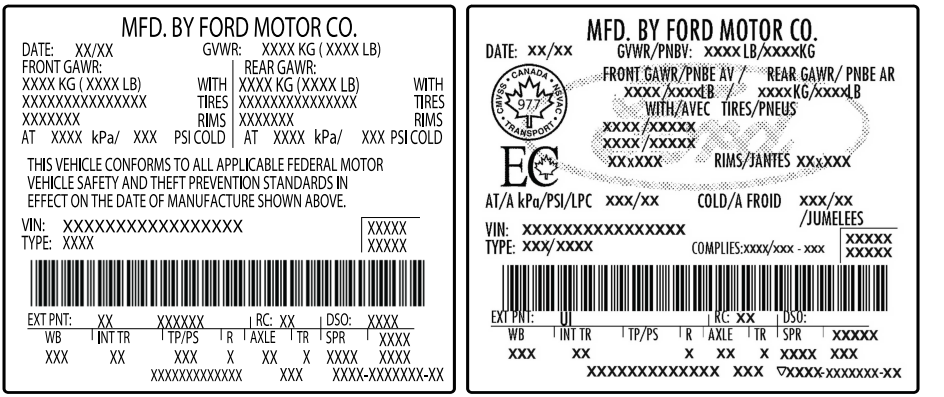
E143818

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) - is the Vehicle Curb Weight, plus cargo, plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). It is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position. **The Gross Vehicle Weight must never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

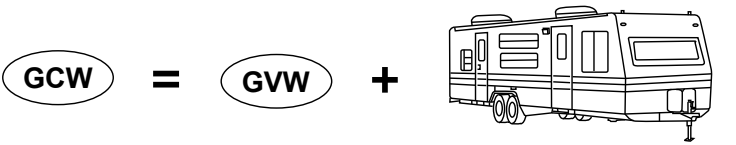
Example only:



E198828

WARNING

Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



E143819

GCW (Gross Combined Weight) - is the Gross Vehicle Weight plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) - is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer, including all cargo and passengers, that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, not at Gross Combined Weight Rating.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the Gross Combined Weight of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating of the towing vehicle. **The Gross Combined Weight must never exceed the Gross Combined Weight Rating.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight - is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with mandatory options, driver and front passenger weight (150 pounds [68 kilograms] each), no cargo weight (internal or external) and a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer). Consult an authorized dealer (or the RV and Trailer Towing Guide available at an authorized dealer) for more detailed information.

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight - refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5000 pound (2268 kilogram) conventional trailer, multiply 5000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 pounds (227 to 340 kilograms). For an 11500 pound (5216 kilogram) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1725 to 2875 pounds (782 to 1304 kilograms).

WARNINGS

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 pounds (99 kilograms) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 pounds (13.5 kilograms) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 pounds. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (5 x 99 kilograms) - (5 x 13.5 kilograms) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kilograms.

*Suppose your vehicle has a 1400-pound (635-kilogram) cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past two years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for twelve 100-pound (45-kilogram) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 pounds (99 kilograms), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 pounds. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (12 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kilograms. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 pounds (104 kilograms). If you remove three 100-pound (45-kilogram) cement bags, then the load calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 pounds. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kilograms - (2 x 99 kilograms) - (9 x 45 kilograms) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kilograms.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position.

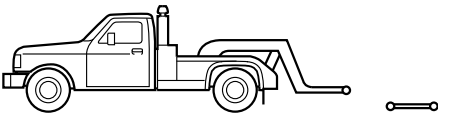
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

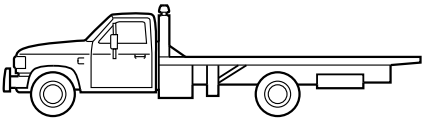
TOWING A TRAILER

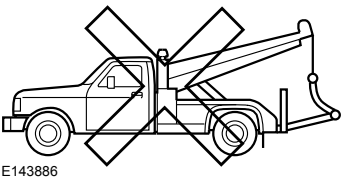
WARNING

Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE







E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure. If the vehicle is towed incorrectly, or by any other means, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

You can tow your vehicle from the front with wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. We recommend that you place the rear wheels on a dolly to prevent damage to the rear of your vehicle.

You can tow your vehicle from the rear with wheel lift equipment.

Note: *You must place the front wheels on a dolly to prevent damage to the transmission.*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Recreational Towing

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See* ***Climate Control*** *(page 104).*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

You can tow your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground or with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly, follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider. If you tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground, follow these instructions:

1. Tow only with your vehicle in the forward direction. Release the parking brake.
2. Place the transmission in neutral.

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You place the transmission in neutral (N). If you cannot place the transmission in neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 138).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

WARNING

Your vehicle is not approved for recreational towing with all four wheels on the ground.

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.*

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

Your vehicle can be towed with the front wheels off the ground by using a tow dolly. If you are using a tow dolly follow the instructions specified by the equipment provider.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - 2.0L, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Emergency Towing

WARNING

If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

You can flat-tow (all wheels on the ground, regardless of the powertrain and transmission configuration) your disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car-hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so you tow it in a forward direction.
- You place the transmission in neutral (N). If you cannot place the transmission in neutral (N), you may need to override it. See **Transmission** (page 138).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 mi (80 km).

Recreational Towing

Vehicles with an Ignition Key

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 104).*

Note: *There must be battery power to move the transmission's internal components to neutral (N) properly in Step 3. In addition, moving the gearshift to the neutral (N) position without first switching the ignition to the on position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 mi (80 km).*

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Switch the ignition to the on position.
3. Press the brake pedal, and then move the gearshift to the neutral (N) position.
4. Wait for a message in the information and entertainment display indicating that the transmission is ready, and then switch off the ignition and release the brake pedal.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

Note: *There is no limit on towing distance.*

After towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).

Vehicles with Keyless Start

Note: *Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 104).*

Note: *There must be battery power to move the transmission's internal components to neutral (N) properly in Step 3. In addition, moving the gearshift to the neutral (N) position without first switching the ignition to the on position limits the towing capability to 35 mph (56 km/h) and 50 mi (80 km).*

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the keyless start button, but do not apply the brake pedal.
3. Press the brake pedal, and then move the gearshift to the neutral (N) position. Release the brake pedal.
4. Wait for a message indicating that the transmission is ready in the information and entertainment display, and then switch off the ignition by pressing the keyless start button.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) cable from the battery. You need the door key to lock and unlock doors when the battery cable is disconnected. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).

Note: *The anti-theft system does not work until you reconnect the battery cable.*

Note: *The maximum towing speed is 70 mph (112 km/h).*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *There is no limit on towing distance.*

After towing, start the engine within 15 minutes of reconnecting the battery cable. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

BREAKING-IN

You need to break in new tires for approximately 300 miles (480 kilometers). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Avoid driving too fast during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

Do not tow during the first 1000 miles (1600 kilometers).

ECONOMICAL DRIVING

Fuel economy is affected by several things such as how you drive, the conditions you drive under and how you maintain your vehicle.

There are some things to keep in mind that may improve your fuel economy:

- Accelerate and slow down in a smooth, moderate fashion.
- Drive at steady speeds.
- Anticipate stops; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving (When running errands, go to the furthest destination first and then work your way back home).
- Close the windows for high-speed driving.
- Drive at reasonable speeds.
- Keep the tires properly inflated and use only the recommended size.
- Use the recommended engine oil.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

There are also some things you may want to avoid doing because they reduce your fuel economy:

- Avoid sudden or hard accelerations.
- Avoid revving the engine before turning off the car.
- Avoid long idle periods.
- Do not warm up your vehicle on cold mornings.
- Reduce the use of air conditioning and heat.
- Avoid using speed control in hilly terrain.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Avoid carrying unnecessary weight.
- Avoid adding particular accessories to your vehicle (e.g. bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski racks).
- Avoid driving with the wheels out of alignment.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -13ºF (-25ºC).

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E176360

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS

WARNINGS

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNINGS

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to make sure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle foot well that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

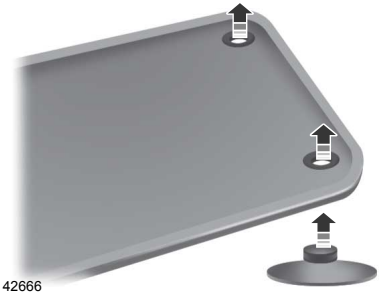
Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while the vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing a loss of vehicle control.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


E142666

To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelet is over the retention post and press down to lock in.

To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24 hours a day, seven days a week.
- For the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner's Manual portfolio.

Roadside Assistance covers:

- A flat tire change with a good spare, if provided with the vehicle (except vehicles supplied with a tire inflation kit).
- Battery jump start.
- Lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility).
- Fuel delivery — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall deliver up to 2 gal (7.6 L) of gasoline or 5 gal (18.9 L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Roadside Assistance limits fuel delivery service to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- Winch out — available within 100 ft (30.5 m) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- Towing — independent service contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law, shall tow Ford eligible vehicles to an authorized dealer within 35 mi (56 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests a tow to an authorized dealer that is more than 35 mi (56 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 mi (56 km).

Roadside Assistance includes up to $200 for a towed trailer if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the towing vehicle is operational but the trailer is not, then the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. This card is in the owner's information portfolio in the glove compartment.

United States Ford vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company reimburses a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 mi (56 km). To obtain reimbursement information, United States Ford vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers need to submit their original receipts.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is eligible within Canada or the continental United States.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty, but the coverage is concurrent with the powertrain coverage period of your vehicle.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference.

In Canada, this card is found in the Warranty Guide in the glove compartment of your vehicle.

Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage

The service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

Canadian roadside coverage and benefits may differ from the U.S. coverage.

For complete program coverage details you may contact your dealer, you can call us in Canada at 1-800-665-2006, or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS

Note: *If used when the vehicle is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel. Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

- Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.
- Press the button again to turn them off.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



Failure to inspect and, if necessary, repair fuel leaks after a collision may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. Ford Motor Company recommends that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Use only an adequate-sized cable with insulated clamps.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: *Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.*

Note: *Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.*

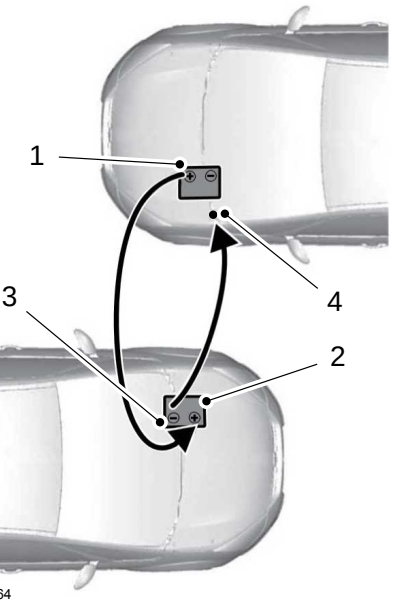
Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Turn all accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNING

Do not attach the cables to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points. Stay clear of moving parts. To avoid reverse polarity connections, make sure that you correctly identify the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals on both the disabled and booster vehicles before connecting the cables. Battery positions may vary.

Note: *In the illustration, the bottom vehicle represents the booster vehicle.*

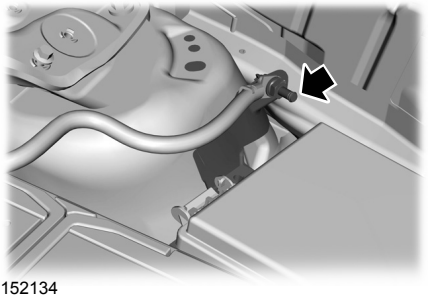


E142664

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



E152134

4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, or connect the negative (-) cable to the ground connection point, if available.

WARNING

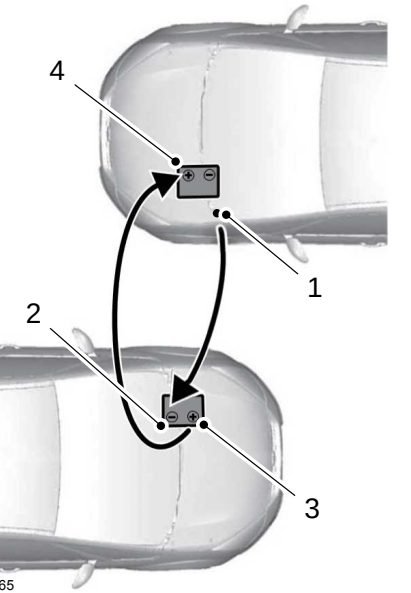
Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and rev the engine moderately, or press the accelerator gently to keep your engine speed between 2000 and 3000 rpms, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. After starting the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.



E142665

1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface or connecting point, if available.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After starting your disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow your vehicle to idle for several minutes so the battery can recharge.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the direction indicators and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the safety belt pretensioners.

The horn and indicators will turn off when:

- You press the hazard control button.
- You press the panic button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).
- Your vehicle runs out of power.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft® parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

Away From Home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

Mailing address

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48126

Telephone

1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired:
1-800-232-5952)

Additional information and resources are available online:

Website
www.owner.ford.com

These are some of the items that can be found online:

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State or Zip Code.
- Owner Manuals.
- Maintenance Schedules.
- Recalls.
- Ford Extended Service Plans.
- Ford Genuine Accessories.
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

Mailing address

Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6K 0C8

Telephone

1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

Website
www.ford.ca

Twitter

@FordServiceCA (English Canada)
@FordServiceQC (Quebec)

Additional Assistance

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling or servicing authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center.

In order to help us serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number.
- Your telephone number (home and business).
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located.
- The vehicle's current odometer reading.

In some states within the United States, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws, and Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt.

Additionally, in some states within the United States, a consumer has the option of submitting a warranty dispute to the BBB Auto Line before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18000 miles (29 000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time).

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

You are required to submit your warranty dispute to BBB AUTO LINE before asserting in court any rights or remedies conferred by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b). You are also required to use BBB AUTO LINE before exercising rights or seeking remedies created by the Federal Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. sec. 2301 et seq. If you choose to seek redress by pursuing rights and remedies not created by California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) or the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, resort to BBB AUTO LINE is not required by those statutes.

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined earlier in this chapter in the Getting the Services you need section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation or you do not want to participate in mediation, and if your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB. You are not bound by the decision, and may reject the decision and proceed to court where all findings of the BBB Auto Line dispute, and decision, are admissible in the court action. Should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford is then bound by the decision, and must comply with the decision within 30 days of receipt of your acceptance letter.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
3033 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 600
Arlington, Virginia 22201

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

Note: *Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding on both you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all Canadian territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685 or visit www.camvap.ca.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact our Customer Relationship Center.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company or Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the United States.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Asia-Pacific Region, Sub-Saharan Africa, U.S. Virgin Islands, Central America, the Caribbean, and Israel, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
Fax: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

For customers in Guam, the Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands (CNMI), America Samoa, and the U.S. Virgin Islands, please feel free to call our Toll-Free Number: (800) 841-FORD (3673).

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Puerto Rico, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (800) 841-FORD (3673)
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: prcac@ford.com
www.ford.com.pr

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
Customer Relationship Center
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.

Ford: 80004443673
Lincoln: 80004441067
If calling from the UAE: 80004441066
If calling from the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia: 8008443673
If calling from Kuwait: 22280384

FAX: +971 4 3327266
Email: menacac@ford.com
www.me.ford.com

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate to any of the above locations, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company by emailing **expcac@ford.com**.

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. In the event your inquiry is unresolved, communicate your concern with the dealership's Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager. If you require additional assistance or clarification, please contact the respective Customer Relationship Center as previously listed.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, Michigan 48170
Attention: Customer Service

Or to order a free publication catalog, call toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:

www.helminc.com

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Obtaining a French Owner's Manual

French Owner's Manual can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by contacting Helm, Incorporated using the contact information listed previously in this section.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)



E142557

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to www.safercar.gov; or write to:

Administrator

1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast

Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from www.safercar.gov.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Ford of Canada.

Transport Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safevehicles-defectinvestigations-index-76.htm (English)
Website	www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/VehiculesSecuritaires-Enquetes-index-76.htm (French)
Phone	1–800–333–0510

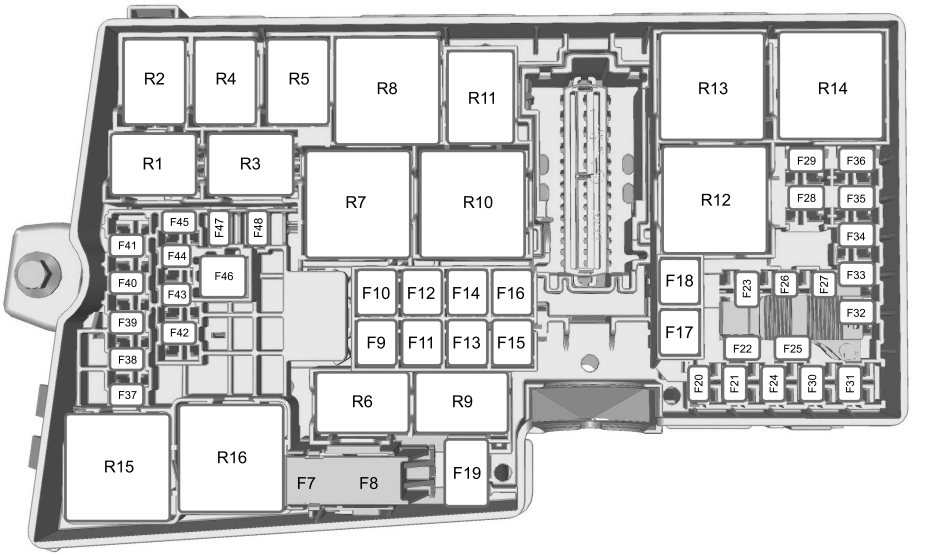
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Ford of Canada Contact Information	
Website	www.ford.ca
Phone	1–800–565-3673

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E129925

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F7	40A**	Anti-lock Braking System pump. Traction control valve.
F8	30A**	Traction control valve.
F9	30A**	Heated rear window.
F10	40A**	Heater blower motor.
F11	30A**	Start-stop module.
F12	30A**	Engine management systems. Exhaust gas re-circulation relay.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F13	30A**	Starter motor.
F14	25A**	Rear power window (without door control unit).
F15	25A**	Transmission control module. Cooling fan – 1.0L EcoBoost.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	20A**	Windshield wipers.
F19	5A*	Traction control module.
F20	15A*	Horn.
F21	5A*	Brake lamp switch.
F22	15A*	Battery monitoring system.
F23	5A*	Relay coils, lighting control switch module.
F24	5A*	Right-hand partially heated windshield element.
F25	10A*	Electric exterior mirrors (without door control unit).
F26	15A*	Transmission control module - 2.0L GDI.
	20A*	Transmission control module - 1.0L Ecoboost.
F27	15A*	Air conditioning clutch.
F28	-	Not used.
F29	10A*	Stop-start.
F30	-	Not used.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	10A*	Powertrain control module. Crankshaft position sensor. Camshaft position sensor.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F33	15A*	Total mass air flow sensor - 2.0 GDI. Ignition coils - 1.0L EcoBoost.
F34	10A*	Run on water pump. Variable valves. Canister purge valve.
F35	10A*	Crankshaft position sensor. Universal heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor. Canister purge valve.
F36	5A*	Active grille shutter.
F37	15A*	Daytime running lamps. Headlamp control module
F38	15A*	Transmission control module global shifter (switched battery power).
F39	15A*	Heated driver seat.
F40	5A*	Electric power assisted steering.
F41	20A*	Body control module KL15 supply.
F42	15A*	Rear wiper motor.
F43	15A*	Headlamp unit (dynamic bending motor).
F44	-	Not used.
F45	15A*	Heated passenger seat.
F46	25A**	Electric power windows (without door control unit).
F47	7.5A*	Heated exterior mirrors (without door control unit).
F48	-	Not used.

*Mini fuses

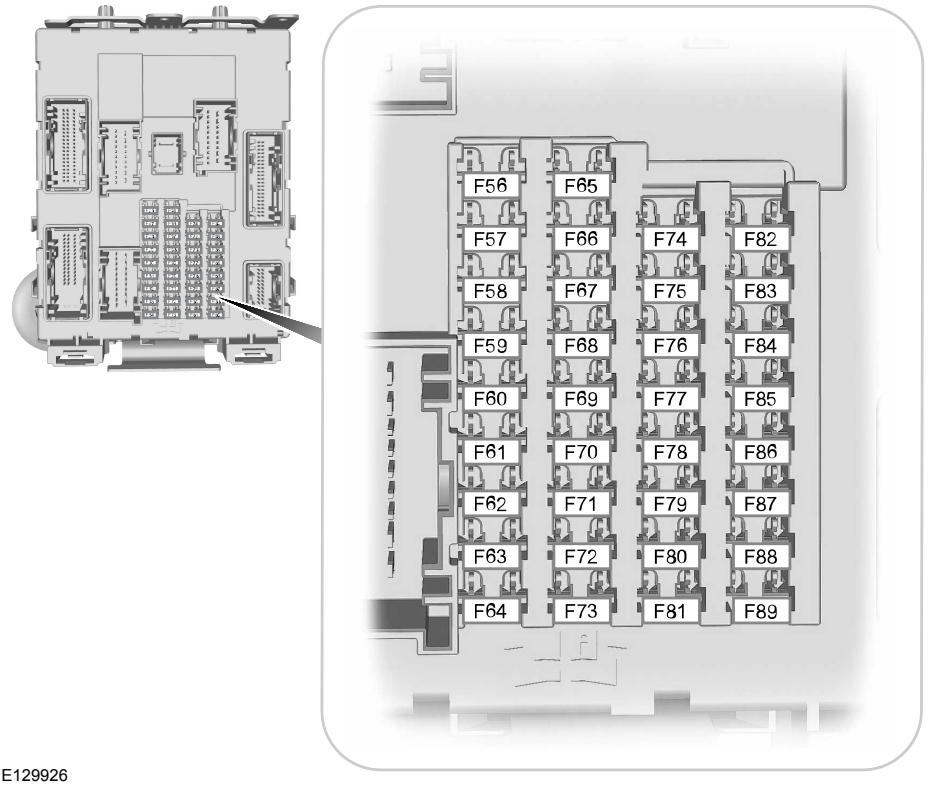
**Cartridge fuses

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Relay	Relay Type	Circuits switched
R1	Micro relay	Intercooler fan.
R2	Micro relay	Horn.
R3	Micro relay	Front window defroster (partially heated windscreen).
R4	-	Not used.
R5	Micro relay	Rear wiper.
R6	-	Not used.
R7	-	Not used.
R8	Power relay	Delayed accessory power.
R9	-	Not used.
R10	Mini relay	Starter relay.
R11	Micro relay	Air conditioning clutch.
R12	Power relay	Cooling fan relay.
R13	Mini relay	Blower motor.
R14	Mini relay	Powertrain control module.
R15	Power relay	Rear window defroster.
R16	Power relay	Ignition.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E129926

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F56	20A	Fuel pump supply.
F57	-	Not used.
F58	-	Not used (spare).
F59	5A	Passive anti-theft system supply.

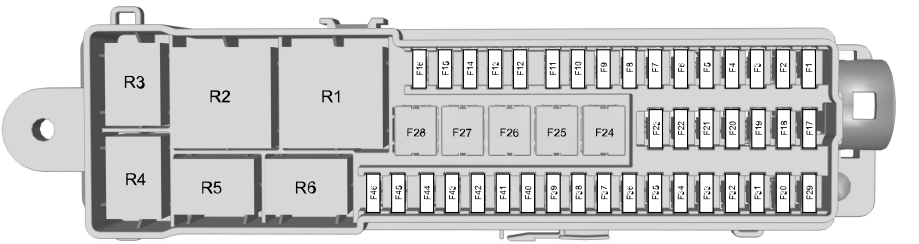
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F60	10A	Interior lamps, driver's door switch pack, glove box, ambient lighting, electric moonroof.
F61	20A	Front cigar lighter. 2nd row power point.
F62	-	Not used (spare).
F63	-	Not used.
F64	-	Not used.
F65	10A	Luggage compartment lid release.
F66	20A	Driver's door lock.
F67	7.5A	Information and entertainment display. Global Positioning System. SYNC module.
F68	-	Not used.
F69	5A	Instrument cluster.
F70	20A	Central locking.
F71	7.5A	Air conditioning.
F72	7.5A	Steering wheel control module.
F73	7.5A	Battery back-up sounder (alarm system). Onboard diagnostics system.
F74	15A	Headlamp unit (main beam).
F75	15A	Front fog lamps.
F76	10A	Reversing lamp.
F77	20A	Washer pump.
F78	5A	Ignition switch or start button.
F79	15A	Audio unit, hazard and door lock buttons.
F80	20A	Electric moonroof.
F81	5A	Radio frequency receiver.
F82	20A	Washer pump ground.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F83	20A	Central locking ground.
F84	20A	Driver's door unlock ground.
F85	7.5A	Voltage quality monitoring (KL15). Manual air conditioning heater module. Forward looking camera. Radio. Moonroof module.
F86	10A	Restraint system. Occupant weight sensor.
F87	15A	Heated steering wheel.
F88	-	Not used.
F89	-	Not used.

Luggage Compartment Fuse Box



E129927

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F1	5A*	Ignition relay.
F2	-	Not used.
F3	5A*	Keyless vehicle door handles.

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F4	25A*	Door module (left-hand front) (electric windows, central locking, heated exterior mirrors).
F5	25A*	Door module (right-hand front) (electric windows, central locking, heated exterior mirrors).
F6	25A*	Door module (left-hand rear) (electric windows).
F7	25A*	Door module (right-hand rear) (electric windows).
F8	-	Not used.
F9	25A*	Power driver's seat adjust.
F10	25A*	Digital signal processing amplifier.
F11	5A*	Keypad switch.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	-	Not used.
F14	-	Not used.
F15	-	Not used.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	-	Not used.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	-	Not used.
F22	-	Not used.
F23	-	Not used.
F24	-	Not used.
F25	-	Not used.
F26	-	Not used.
F27	-	Not used.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
F28	-	Not used.
F29	5A*	Blind spot monitor. Rear view camera without start stop module.
F30	5A*	Parking aid module.
F31	-	Not used.
F32	-	Not used.
F33	-	Not used.
F34	-	Not used.
F35	-	Not used.
F36	-	Not used.
F37	-	Not used.
F38	-	Not used.
F39	-	Not used.
F40	-	Not used.
F41	-	Not used.
F42	-	Not used.
F43	-	Not used.
F44	-	Not used.
F45	-	Not used.
F46	-	Not used.

*Mini fuses

**Cartridge fuses

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

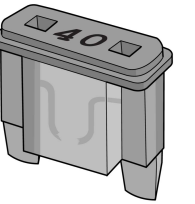
Relay	Relay Type	Circuits switched
R1	Power relay	Ignition switch.
R2	-	Not used.
R3	-	Not used.
R4	-	Not used.
R5	-	Not used.
R6	-	Not used.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING

Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

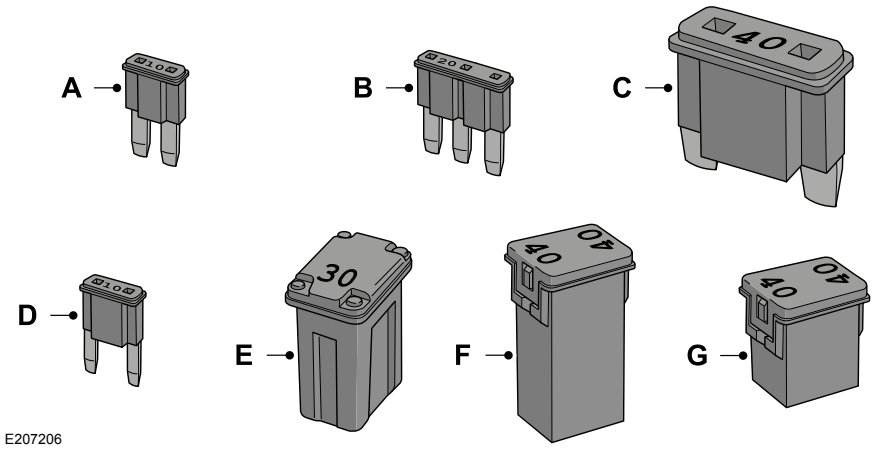


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Fuse Types



Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft® parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

Precautions

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material (such as cigarettes) away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the Engine Off

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the Engine On

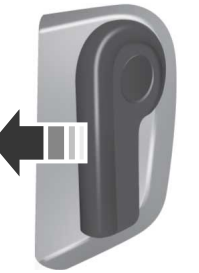
WARNING

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Set the parking brake and shift to park (P).
2. Block the wheels.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

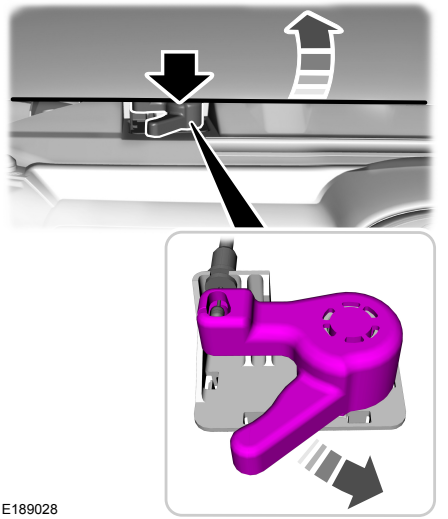
1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142457

2. Go to the front of your vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front of the hood, left of center, and push it to your right-hand side to release.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

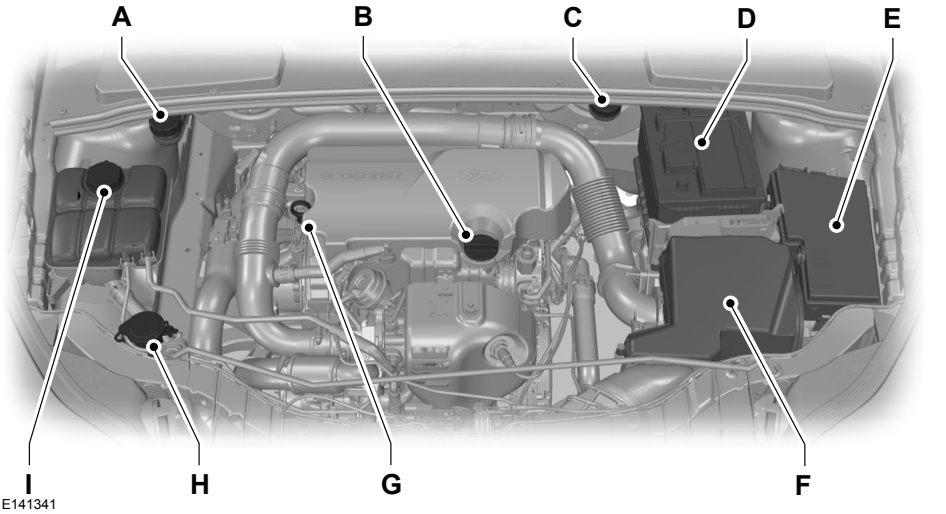


3. Lift the hood and support it with the prop rod.
4. To close the hood, remove the support rod from the catch and secure correctly.
5. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 8 in to 12 in (20 cm to 30 cm).

Note: *Make sure the hood is fully closed.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 220).

B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).

C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 220).

D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).

E Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 202).

F Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 233).

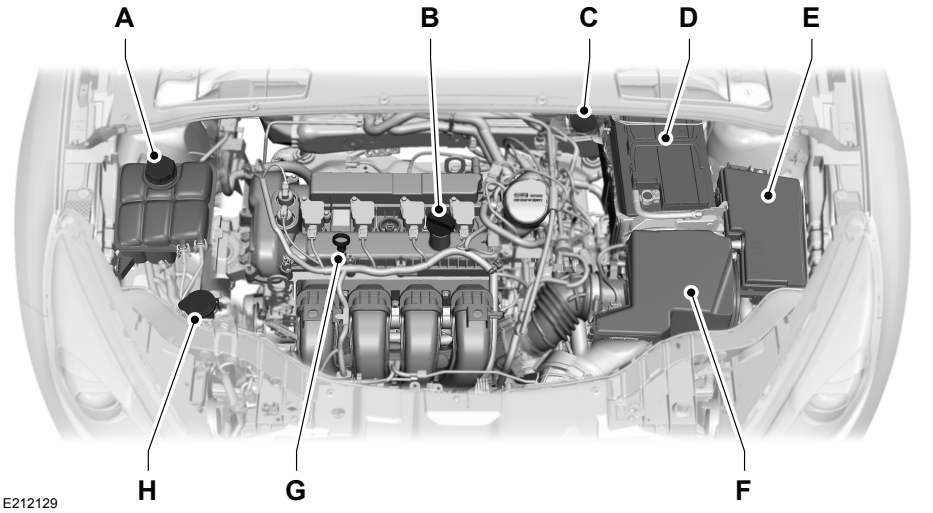
G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 217).

H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 220).

I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

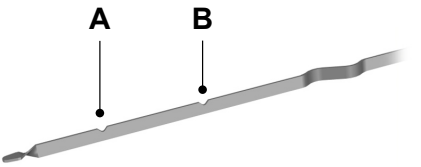
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L



A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 218).
B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).
C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Clutch Fluid Check** (page 220).
D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 221).
E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 202).
F Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 233).
G Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).
H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 220).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

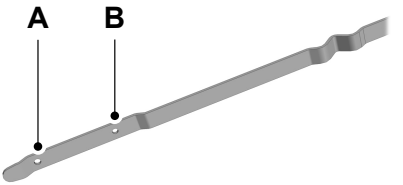
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L



E191425

A Minimum.
B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is at the minimum mark, add oil immediately. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.*

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 3,000 mi (5,000 km).*

Adding Engine Oil



E142732

Only use oils certified for gasoline engines by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC).

WARNINGS

Only add oil when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

1. Remove the engine oil filler cap.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).
3. Wipe off any spilled oil.
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.*

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

Checking the Engine Coolant

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the engine coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339).

Note: *Make sure that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the coolant reservoir.*

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the MAX mark.*

Note: *If the level is at the MIN mark, below the MIN mark, or empty, add coolant immediately. See **Adding Engine Coolant** in this chapter.*

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30ºF (-34ºC) and -34ºF (-37ºC).

Note: *For best results, coolant concentration should be tested with a refractometer, for example Robinair® Coolant and Battery Refractometer 75240. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentrations.*

Note: *Automotive fluids are not interchangeable. Do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.*

Adding Engine Coolant

WARNINGS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

Do not add coolant further than the MAX mark.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants or additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. The vehicle warranty does not cover this damage.*

Note: *During normal vehicle operation, the engine coolant may change color from orange to pink or light red. As long as the engine coolant is clear and uncontaminated, this color change does not indicate that the engine coolant has degraded, nor does it require that qualified personnel drain the engine coolant, flush the system or replace the engine coolant.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Make sure the correct coolant is used. Mixing of engine coolants may harm the engine's cooling system. The use of incorrect coolant may harm engine and cooling system components and may void the warranty. Use prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).
- In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, you must have the cooling system drained, chemically cleaned with Motorcraft Premium Cooling System Flush, and refilled with engine coolant as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze. Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage, for example overheating or freezing.
- Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure will escape as you unscrew the cap.

Add prediluted engine coolant meeting the Ford specification. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

Whenever you add coolant, check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

Recycled Engine Coolant

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer increase the coolant concentration above 50%.
- A coolant concentration of 60% will provide improved freeze point protection. Engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- It may be necessary to have a Ford authorized dealer decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.
- A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze and corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use prediluted engine coolant for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CHECK

The automatic transmission does not have a transmission fluid dipstick.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Have an authorized dealer check and change the transmission fluid at the correct service interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339). Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, if the transmission slips, shifts slowly or if you notice a sign of leaking fluid, contact an authorized dealer.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

BRAKE FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS

Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

A fluid level between the ***MAX*** and ***MIN*** lines is within the normal operating range and there is no need to add fluid. A fluid level not in the normal operating range could compromise the performance of the system. Have your vehicle checked immediately.



E170684

To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

CLUTCH FLUID CHECK - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Brake Fluid Check** (page 220).

WASHER FLUID CHECK

When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

Your vehicle has a Motorcraft® maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.

Note: *If your vehicle's battery has a cover or shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.*

Note: *See an authorized dealer for low voltage battery access, testing, or replacement.*

When a low voltage battery replacement is necessary, see an authorized dealer to replace the low voltage battery with a Ford recommended replacement low voltage battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

To ensure proper operation of the battery management system (BMS), do not allow a technician to connect any electrical device ground connection directly to the low voltage battery negative post. A connection at the low voltage battery negative post can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If a person adds electrical or electronic accessories or components to the vehicle, the accessories or components may adversely affect the low voltage battery performance and durability and may also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When a battery replacement is required, the battery should only be replaced with a Ford recommended replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of the vehicle.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically-controlled by a computer, some engine control settings are maintained by power from the low voltage battery. Some engine computer settings, like the idle trim and fuel trim strategy, optimize the driveability and performance of the engine. Some other computer settings, like the clock and radio station presets, are also maintained in memory by power from the low voltage battery. When a technician disconnects and connects the low voltage battery, these settings are erased. Complete the following procedure in order to restore the settings:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Switch off all accessories.
4. Fully press the brake pedal and start the vehicle.
5. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature. While the engine is warming up, complete the following: Reset the clock. See **Audio System** (page 281). Reset the power windows bounce-back feature. See **Windows and Mirrors** (page 82). Reset the radio station presets. See **Audio System** (page 281).
6. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute. If the engine turns off, press the accelerator pedal to start the engine.
7. While the engine is running, press the brake pedal and shift into neutral (N).
8. Allow the engine to run for at least one minute by pressing on the accelerator pedal.
9. Drive the vehicle at least 12 mi (20 km) to completely relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.

Note: *If you do not allow the engine to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the engine computer eventually relearns the idle trim and fuel trim strategy.*

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

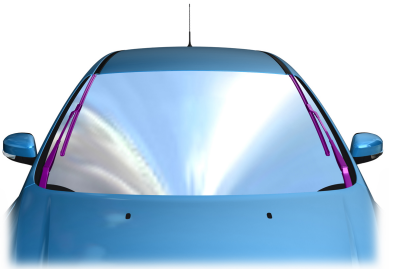
Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Note: *If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades** (page 238). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Service Position

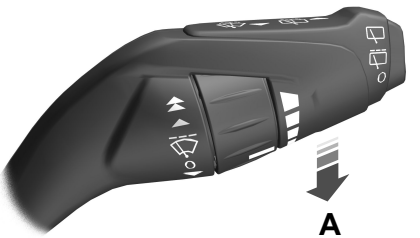


E75184

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. The windshield wipers return to the starting position when you switch the ignition on.

Note: *You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.*

1. Switch the ignition on.



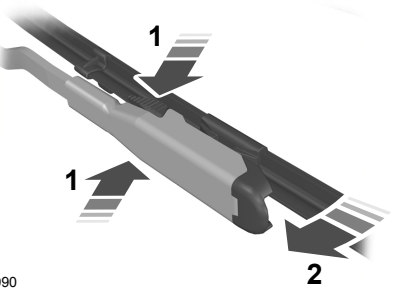
E129986

2. Switch the ignition off and press and hold the wiper lever in position A within three seconds.
3. Release the wiper lever when the windshield wipers reach the service position.

Note: *You can also move the wiper arms to the service position manually when the ignition is off. Do not move the wiper arms to the service position manually when the ignition is on. The wiper arms lock when you switch the ignition on.*

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E129990

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

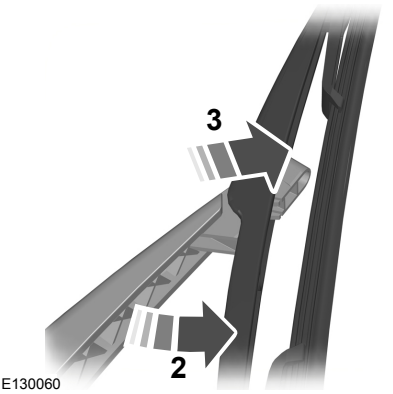
2. Press the locking buttons together.
3. Rotate and remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E130060

Note: *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

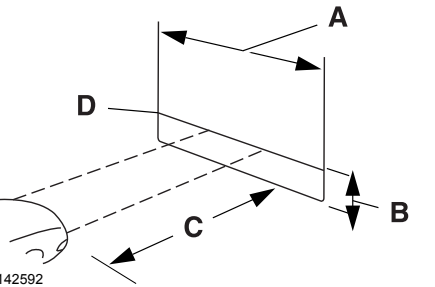
Note: *Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.*

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the aim of the headlamp beam checked by an authorized dealer.

Headlamp Aiming Target



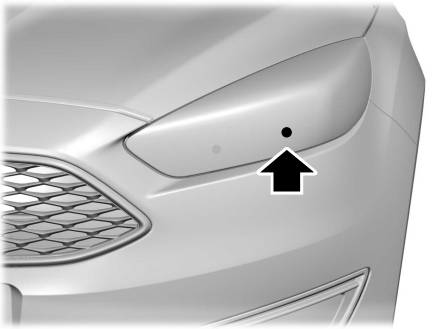
E142592

A	8 ft (2.4 m)
B	Ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb
C	25 ft (7.6 m)
D	Horizontal reference line

Vertical Aim Adjustment Procedure

1. Park your vehicle on level ground approximately 25 ft (7.6 m) from a wall or screen.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the center of the headlamp low beam bulb and mark an 8 ft (2.4 m) long horizontal reference line on the wall or screen at this height.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

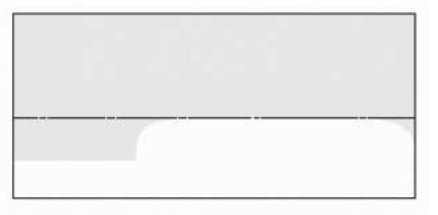


E199411

Note: *There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the bulb.*

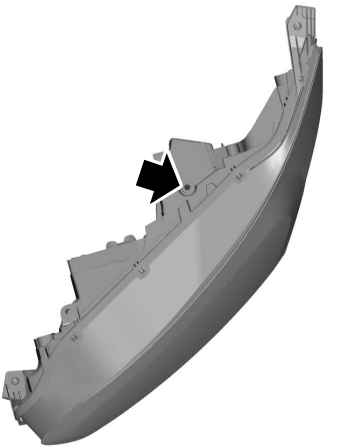
Note: *To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, you may want to block the light from the other headlamp.*

3. Switch on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.



E142465

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the flat zone of high intensity light is not on the horizontal reference line, adjust the aim of the headlamp beam.



E164485

5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver or hexagonal socket, to turn the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise to adjust the vertical aim of the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

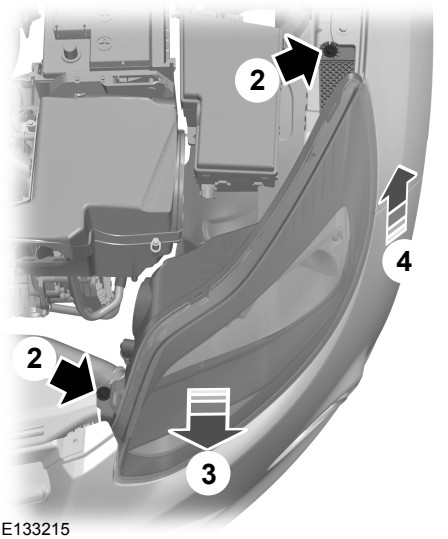
Horizontal Aim Adjustment

The horizontal aim of the headlamp beam on your vehicle is not adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

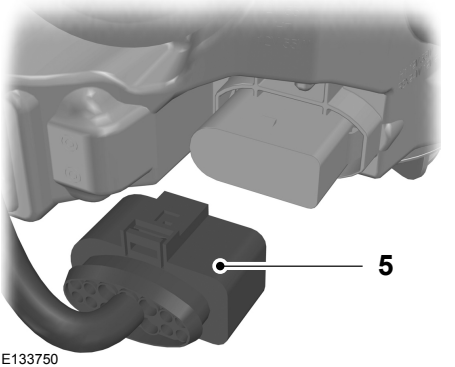
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 213).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E133215

2. Remove the screws.
3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



E133750

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

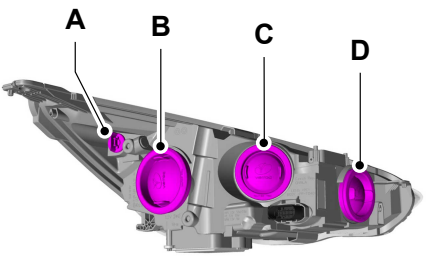
CHANGING A BULB

WARNING

Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb by only its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Note: *If you accidently touch the bulb, you should clean it with rubbing alcohol.*

Headlamp



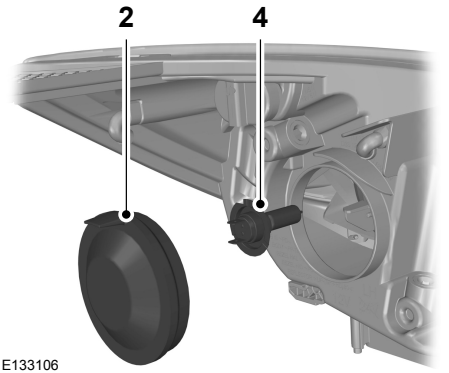
E184152

A. Side marker bulb.
B. Low beam headlamp bulb.
C. High beam headlamp bulb.
D. Direction indicator bulb. Cornering lamp bulb.

Headlamp Low Beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 225).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

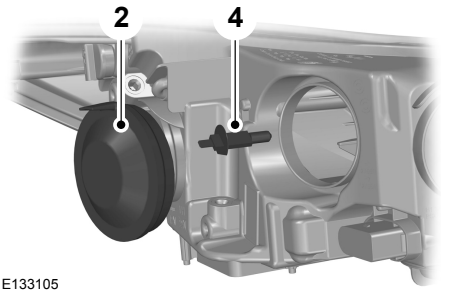


E133106

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Headlamp High Beam

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 225).



E133105

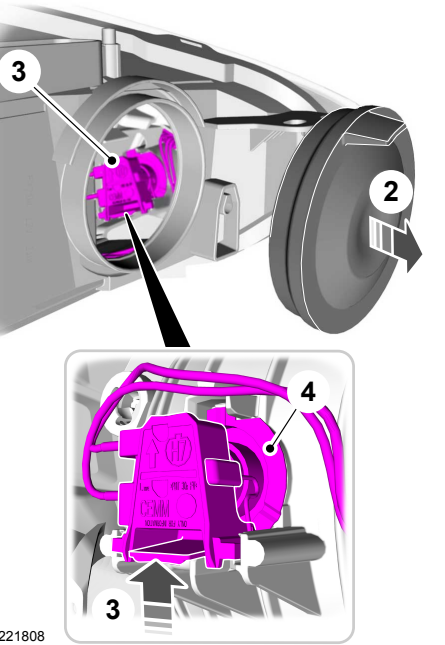
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

HID Headlamps

If your vehicle has high-intensity discharge headlamps, these lamps operate at a high voltage. Contact an authorized dealer.

Cornering Lamp (If Equipped)

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 225).



E221808

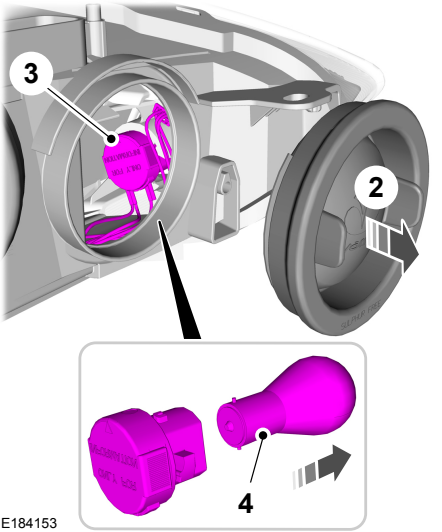
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Depress the clip to remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
5. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Note: *Do not touch the bulb glass.*

Front Direction Indicator

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 225).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

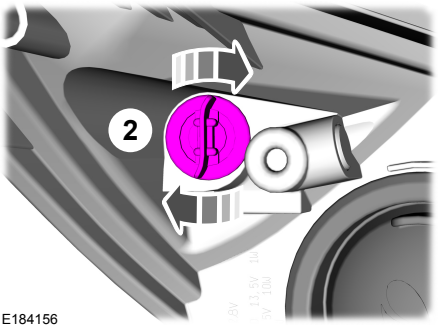


E184153

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Side Marker Bulb

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 225).

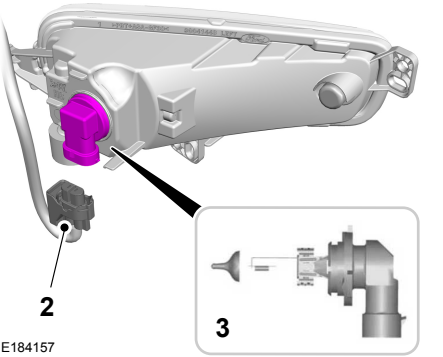


E184156

2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb holder by pulling it straight out.
4. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

Front Fog Lamp

1. Remove fog lamp grille from the front fascia then unscrew the fog lamp.



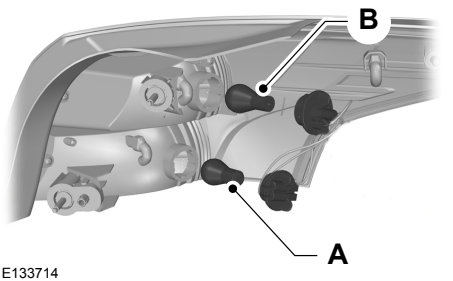
E184157

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Note: *You cannot separate the bulb from the bulb holder.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Rear Lamps - 4 Door

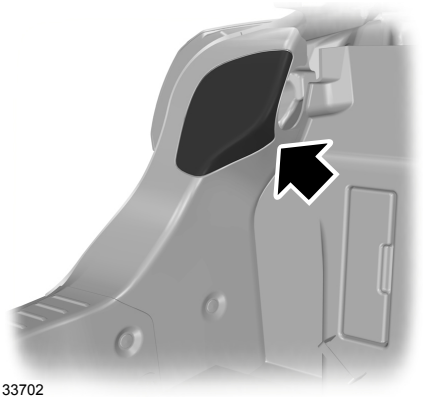


E133714

A. Direction indicator and rear lamp bulb.

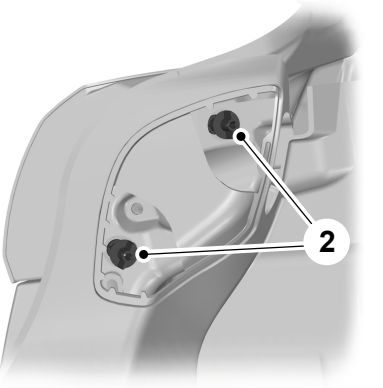
B. Brake lamp bulb.

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



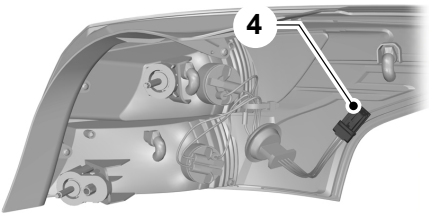
E133702

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E133703

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.

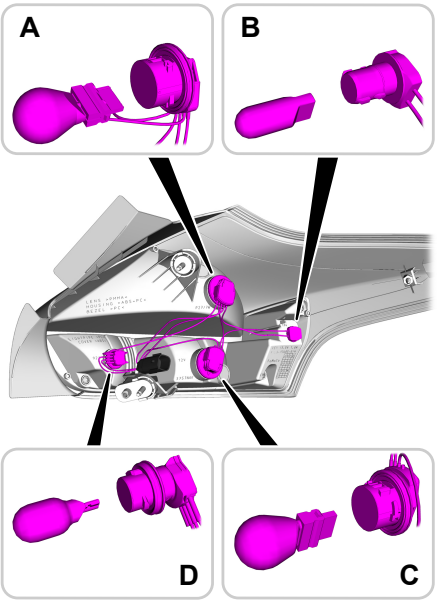


E133713

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

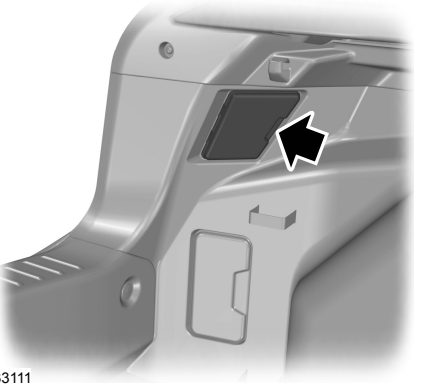
Rear Lamps - 5 Door



E184159

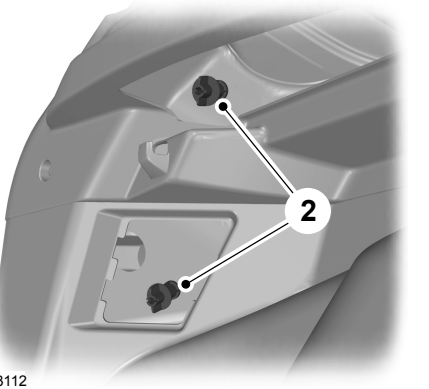
A. Brake and rear lamp bulb.
B. Side marker lamp bulb.
C. Direction indicator bulb.
D. Reverse lamp bulb.

Brake Lamp, Rear Lamp and Direction Indicator



E133111

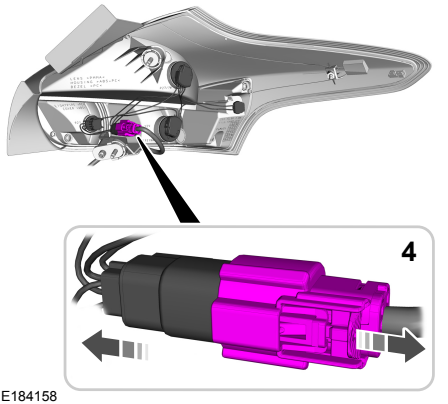
1. Carefully remove the cover.



E133112

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E184158

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
6. Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

LED Rear Lamps (If Equipped)

These lamps have LED bulbs. Contact an authorized dealer.

Replacing Licence Plate and High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs

These lamps have LED bulbs. Contact an authorized dealer.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Trade number
Headlamps high beam (Halogen)	H1LL
* Headlamps high beam (HID)	D3S
Headlamp low beam (Halogen)	H11LL
* Headlamp low beam (HID)	D3S
Daytime running lamps	H1LL
* Daytime running lamps (High series)	LED
Park lamp - front	193
* Park lamp - front (High series)	LED
Direction indicator - front	WY21W
Direction indicator - front (High series)	PY21W
Fog lamps	H8
Sidemarker - front	WY5W

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Function	Trade number
Direction indicator - rear (4-door)	P27/7W
Direction indicator - rear (5-door)	3757 NAK
Rear and brake lamps	P27/7W
Rear lamps (4-door)	194
* Rear lamp (5-door high series)	LED
Sidemarker - rear (5-door)	194
* Sidemarker - rear (High series)	LED
Backup lamp	921
* License plate lamp	LED
* High-mount brake lamp	LED
* Interior lamps	LED

* To replace these lamps, contact an authorized dealer.

To replace all instrument panel lights, contact an authorized dealer.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING

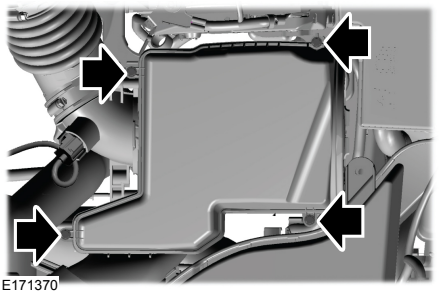
To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed. Do not remove the air cleaner while the engine is running.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed in the Motorcraft Parts table. See **Motorcraft Parts** (page 270).

For EcoBoost equipped vehicles: When servicing the air cleaner, it is important that no foreign material enter the air induction system. The engine and turbocharger are susceptible to damage from even small particles.

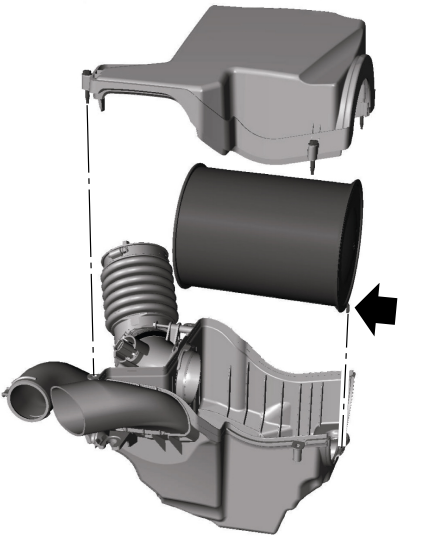
Change the air filter element at the proper interval. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.*



E171370

1. Loosen the four fasteners and remove the air cleaner assembly lid.
2. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
3. Wipe any dirt or debris from the air cleaner assembly to make sure no dirt gets in the engine and to make sure you have a good seal.



E170433

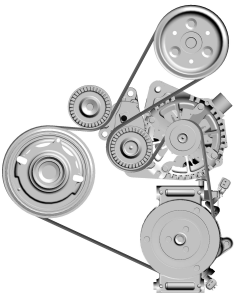
4. Install the new air filter element. Slide the open end of the air filter element in first, below the tab. Then push the closed end of the air filter into the bottom of the tray. The closed end should fit inside the groove in the tray. The tab of the closed end of the air filter should be oriented down and fit between the forks on the tray as shown at the arrow above.

Note: *Make sure you align the tab in the air filter element with the fork in the air cleaner assembly tray.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

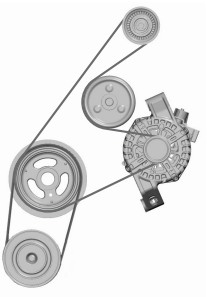
5. Install the air cleaner assembly lid and tighten the four fasteners.

DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E163197

DRIVE BELT ROUTING - 2.0L



E189146

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Your dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes.

CLEANING PRODUCTS

For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Materials

Name	Specification
Motorcraft® Bug and Tar Remover *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Dissolvant de goudron et éliminateur d'insectes *(Canada)* ZC-42 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Custom Bright Metal Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Nettoyant pour métal brillant *(Canada)* ZC-15 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Detail Wash *(U.S.)* Shampooing superfin Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-3-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	ESR-M14P4-A
Motorcraft® Engine Shampoo and Degreaser Engine Shampoo and Degreaser ZC-20 *(U.S.)*	-
Engine Shampoo Motorcraft® Shampooing pour moteur *(Canada)* CXC-66-A *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Leather and Vinyl Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Nettoyant pour cuir et vinyle de haute qualité *(Canada)* ZC-56 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Multi-Purpose Cleaner Motorcraft® Nettoyant multi-usage *(Canada)* CXC-101 *(Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant *(U.S.)* Liquide lave-glace de haute qualité Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-32-B2 *(U.S.)* CXC-37-A/B/D/F *(Canada)*	WSS-M14P19-A
Professional Strength Carpet and Upholstery Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Nettoyant professionnel pour sellerie et moquette *(Canada)* ZC-54 *(U.S. & Canada)*	-
Motorcraft® Spot and Stain Remover Spot and Stain Remover ZC-14 *(U.S.)*	-
Motorcraft® Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner *(U.S.)* Motorcraft® Nettoie-vitres de qualité supérieure *(Canada)* ZC-23 *(U.S.)* CXC-100 *(Canada)*	ESR-M14P5-A
Motorcraft® Wheel and Tire Cleaner *(U.S.)*	-

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Name	Specification
Nettoyant pour roues et pneus Motorcraft® *(Canada)* ZC-37-A *(U.S. & Canada)*	

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, for example dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash your vehicle when it is hot to the touch, or during strong or direct sunlight.
- Dry your vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel to eliminate water spotting.
- Immediately remove fuel spillages, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. We recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.
- Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage painted surfaces. If these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash the affected area as soon as possible.*

Exterior Chrome Parts

- Apply a high quality-cleaning product to bumpers and other chrome parts. Follow the manufacturer's instructions. We recommend Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner.
- Do not apply the cleaning product to hot surfaces. Do not leave the cleaning product on chrome surfaces longer than the time recommended.
- Using other non-recommended cleaners can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Note: *Never use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Exterior Plastic Parts

For routine cleaning we recommend Motorcraft Detail Wash. If tar or grease spots are present, we recommend Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

Stripes or Graphics (If Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 2,000 psi (14,000 kPa).
- Do not use water hotter than 179°F (82°C).
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 12 in (305 mm) distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

Underbody

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

Under Hood

For removing black rubber marks from under the hood we recommend Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner or Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

WAXING

Regular waxing is necessary to protect your car's paint from the elements. We recommend that you wash and wax the painted surface once or twice a year.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle before applying wax.

- Use a quality wax that does not contain abrasives.
- Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax.
- Apply a small amount of wax in a back-and-forth motion, not in circles.
- Do not allow wax to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim. The wax will discolor or stain the parts over time.
  - Roof racks.
  - Bumpers.
  - Grained door handles.
  - Side moldings.
  - Mirror housings.
  - Windshield cowl area.
- Do not apply wax to glass areas.
- After waxing, your car's paint should feel smooth, and be free of streaks and smudges.

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal.

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada, use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

Car wash chemicals and environmental fallout can result in windshield and wiper blade contamination. Dirty windshield and wipers will result in poor windshield wiper operation. Keep the windshield and wiper blades clean to maintain windshield wiper performance.

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner. When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.
- For windshields contaminated with tree sap, chemicals, wax or bugs, clean the entire windshield using steel wool (no greater than 0000 grade) in a circular motion and rinse with water.
- Clean the wiper blades with isopropyl rubbing alcohol or windshield washer concentrate.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.*

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

WARNINGS

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner.
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover. In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL AND INSTRUMENT CLUSTER LENS

WARNING

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces. See* ***Cleaning Leather Seats*** *(page 239).*

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Do not use any household cleaning products or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.
- Wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

If a staining liquid like coffee or juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, soft cloth as quickly as possible.
2. Use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors. Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.
3. Alternatively, wipe the surface with a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
4. If necessary, apply more soap and water solution or cleaning product to a clean, soft cloth and press it onto the soiled area. Allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.
5. Remove the soaked cloth, then with a clean, damp cloth, use a rubbing motion for 60 seconds on the soiled area.
6. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If Equipped)

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Your vehicle color code is printed on a sticker on the front, left-hand side door jamb. Take your color code to your authorized dealer to make sure you get the correct color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner such as Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Always read the instructions before using cleaning products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS (If Equipped)

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength or heavy-duty cleaners in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergents.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean the wheels weekly using Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner. Apply using manufacturer's instructions.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all motor vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve engine components.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminates which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.
- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.

Fuel system

- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.
- If storing your vehicle for more than 30 days without recharging the battery, we recommend that you disconnect the battery cables to maintain battery charge for quick starting.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if battery cables are disconnected.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 25 ft (7.5 m) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

Removing Vehicle From Storage

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check under the hood for any foreign material that may have collected during storage such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign material that may have collected during storage.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 15 ft (4.5 m) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

TIRE CARE

Important Information for 235/40R18 Low-Profile Tires and Wheels

If your vehicle is equipped with 235/40R18 tires, they are low-profile tires. These tires and wheels are designed to give your vehicle a sport appearance. With low-profile tires, you may notice an increase in road noise and faster tire wear, depending on road conditions and driving styles. Due to their design, low-profile tires and wheels are more prone to road damage from potholes, rough or unpaved roads, car wash rails and curb contact than standard tires and wheels.

Note: *Your vehicle's warranty does not cover these types of damage. Tires should always be kept at the correct inflation pressures and extra caution should be taken when operating on rough roads to avoid impacts that could cause wheel and tire damage.*

Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading



E142542

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The tire Quality Grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example: **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**.

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or LT type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104 ©)(2).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear 1½ times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Temperature A B C

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Tire label: A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

Tire Identification Number (TIN): A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

Inflation pressure: A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

Standard load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi (2.41 bar)[36 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

Extra load: A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 42 psi (2.9 bar). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

kPa: Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

PSI: Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

Cold tire pressure: The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mi (1.6 km).

Recommended inflation pressure: The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position) or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

B-pillar: The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

Bead area of the tire: Area of the tire next to the rim.

Sidewall of the tire: Area between the bead area and the tread.

Tread area of the tire: Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

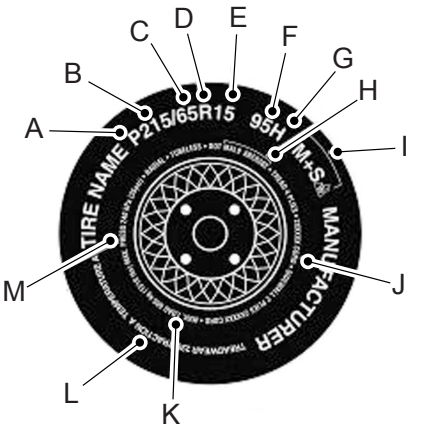
Rim: The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information on P Type Tires



E142543

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter, this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: *You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.*

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

Note: *For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.*

H. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

J. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:**

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

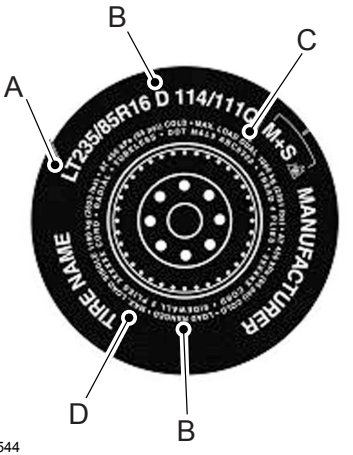
***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. **Maximum Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. **Load Range and Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

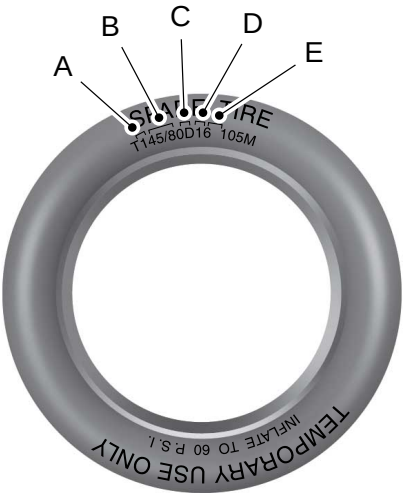
Information on T Type Tires

T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142545

A. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport-utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. **D:** Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the Tire Label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

Inflating Your Tires

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNING

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure, which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: *If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (for example, driven more than 1 mile [1.6 kilometers], never bleed or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.*

Note: *If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.*

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you overfill the tire, release air by pressing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.*

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: *Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type mini-spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For full-size and dissimilar spare tires, refer to the Dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly information for a description. Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.*

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

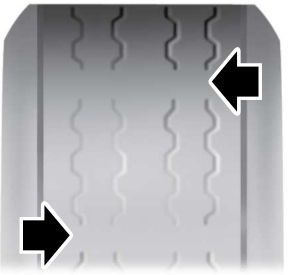
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Inspecting Your Tires and Wheel Valve Stems

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check the tire and valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that may permit air leakage and repair or replace the tire and replace the valve stem. Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

WARNING

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (such as load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number

Both United States and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a United States DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

WARNINGS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver's door. If this information is not found on these labels, then you should contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.

WARNINGS

When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.

2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.

Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft (3.66 m) away from the wheel and tire assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your tire pressure monitoring system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety Practices

WARNINGS

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., do not rapidly spin the tires. Spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 30 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

Observe posted speed limits.

Avoid fast starts, stops and turns.

Avoid potholes and objects on the road.

Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking.

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there is always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front-wheel drive vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire Rotation

WARNING

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

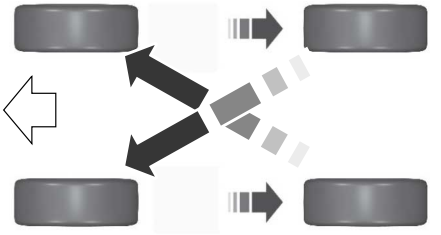
Note: *Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly. A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the Scheduled Maintenance chapter) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Front-wheel drive vehicles (front tires on the left side of the diagram).



E142547

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING

Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires or snow chains.

If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of the driver door or the B-Pillar) and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

If you use snow chains, we recommend that steel wheels of the same size and specifications are used. Snow chains may damage aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow chains:

- Avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Only use small link snow chains of approximately 10mm with 215/55R16 tires only.
- Only use small link snow chains of approximately 15mm with 195/65R15 tires only.
- Only use snow chains on the tire sizes listed above.
- Snow chains must be mounted in pairs on the front axle.
- Install snow chains securely, make sure they do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed.
- Do not use snow chains on dry roads.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

WARNING

The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System


E142549

Note: *Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor is attached to the valve stem. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor*

You should always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Check the tire pressure periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge. See Inflating Your Tires in this chapter.

Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The tire pressure monitoring system measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The low tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under-inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns on and a short time later turns off, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

When Your Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel and tire assembly needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full function of the tire pressure monitoring system, have the damaged road wheel and tire assembly repaired and remounted on your vehicle.

When You Believe Your System is Not Operating Properly

The main function of the tire pressure monitoring system is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. See the following chart for information concerning your tire pressure monitoring system:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Low tire pressure warning light	Possible cause	Customer action required
Solid warning light	Tire(s) under-inflated	Make sure tires are at the proper pressure. See Inflating your tires in this chapter. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light turns off.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.
Flashing warning light	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire assembly and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system function. For a description on how the system functions, see **When your temporary spare tire is installed** in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If the tires are properly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

When Inflating Your Tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the tire pressure monitoring system may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn off after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

How Temperature Affects Your Tire Pressure

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase about 2–4 psi (14–28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary overnight with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease about 3 psi (21 kPa) for a drop of 30ºF (17ºC) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the tire pressure monitoring system as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the system warning light for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is on, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check the air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

WARNINGS

The use of tire sealant may damage your tire pressure monitoring system and should only be used in roadside emergencies. If you must use a sealant, the Ford Tire Mobility Kit sealant should be used. The tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel must be replaced by an authorized dealer after use of the sealant.

If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259).

Note: *The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on this vehicle.*

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the system sensors See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 259). Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the system sensor for damage.

Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information

WARNING

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road wheel and tire assembly that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly is defined as a spare wheel and tire assembly that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter T for tire size and may have Temporary Use Only molded in the sidewall.

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: THIS WHEEL AND TIRE ASSEMBLY FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, do not:

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label.
- Tow a trailer.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire.
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire.

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, do not:

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h).
- Use more than one dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly at a time.
- Use commercial car washing equipment.
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly.

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance.
- Comfort and noise.
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs.
- Winter weather driving capability.
- Wet weather driving capability.
- All-wheel driving capability.

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer.
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body.
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack.

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly and seek service as soon as possible.

Tire Change Procedure

WARNINGS

When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure to place the transmission in park (P), set the parking brake and block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

WARNINGS

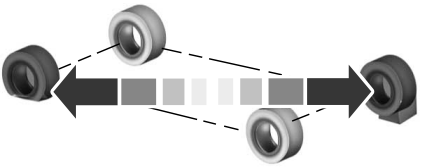
Never get underneath a vehicle that is supported only by a jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

Always use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If using a jack other than the one provided as original equipment with your vehicle, make sure the jack capacity is adequate for the vehicle weight, including any vehicle cargo or modifications.

Note: *Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.*

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Place the transmission in park (P) (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) (manual transmission) and turn the engine off.
3. Remove the carpeted wheel cover.
4. Remove the spare tire bolt securing the spare tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Remove the spare tire from the spare tire compartment
6. Remove the retaining bolt securing the jack by turning it counterclockwise.
7. Remove the jack.



E142551

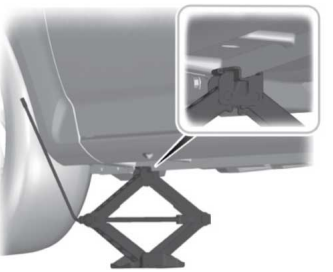
8. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.
9. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.
10. The vehicle jacking points are shown here, and are depicted on the warning label on the jack. **Note:** Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.



E145908

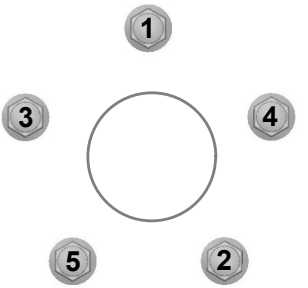
11. Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E142553

12. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.
13. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.
14. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.



E75442

15. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. See **Lug Nuts** (page 266).

Stowing the Flat Tire

The full-size road wheel can be stowed in the spare tire compartment.

1. Lift the carpeted wheel cover at an angle to access the spare tire compartment.
2. Place the wheel in the spare tire well with the valve stem facing down. Use the mini-spare bolt to secure the wheel.
3. Place the jack and tools back into the spare tire compartment.
4. Replace the carpeted wheel cover.

DRIVING AT HIGH SPEED

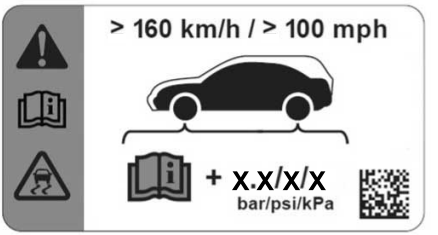
Tire pressure - Speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h)

WARNING

To reduce the risk of potential tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death, increase the front and rear tire placard pressures by the amount shown on the warning label, located on either the driver side B-pillar or door, when driving over 100 mph (160 km/h). Only travel at speeds over 100 mph (160 km/h) where it is legal and conditions allow. The tire placard pressure can be found on the tire placard located on either the driver side B-pillar or door of your vehicle.

Warning: Failure to follow these instructions can result in a loss of vehicle stability due to tire failure that could lead to serious injury or death. If you are not sure about the proper tire inflation pressures, contact an authorized dealer or service center.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



E184089

Your tires may require additional inflation pressure for operation at speeds greater than 100 mph (160 km/h). If this label is present on your vehicle, you must adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

LUG NUTS

WARNING

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 mi (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*
M12 x 1.5	100 lb.ft (135 Nm)

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.



E145950

A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Engine	1.0L EcoBoost
Cubic inches	61
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane
Firing order	1-2-3
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.026 – 0.030 in. (0.65 – 0.75 mm)
Compression ratio	10.0:1

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

Engine	2.0L GDI
Cubic inches	121
Required fuel	Minimum 87 octane or E85
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	.034 - .036 in. (.85 - .95 mm)
Compression ratio	12.0:1

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery	BAGM-48H6-760
Spark plugs	SP-538A
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2802 (driver side) WW-2803 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1295

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

MOTORCRAFT PARTS - 2.0L

Component	Part Number
Air filter element	FA-1908
Oil filter	FL-910-S
Battery - vehicles with manual transmissions	BXT-96R-500
Battery - vehicles with automatic transmissions	BXT-96R-590
Spark plugs	SP-535
Cabin air filter	FP-70
Windshield wiper blade	WW-2802 (driver side) WW-2803 (passenger side)
Rear window wiper blade	WW-1295

We recommend Motorcraft replacement parts available at your Ford dealer or at fordparts.com for scheduled maintenance. These parts meet or exceed Ford Motor Company's specifications and are engineered for your vehicle. Use of other parts may impact vehicle performance, emissions and durability. Your warranty may be void for any damage related to use of other parts.

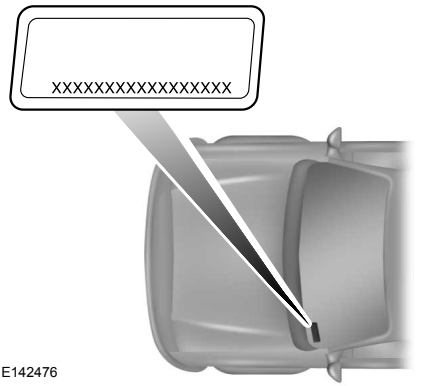
If a Motorcraft oil filter is not available, use an oil filter that meets industry performance specification SAE/USCAR-36.

For spark plug replacement, contact an authorized dealer. Replace the spark plugs at the appropriate intervals. See **Scheduled Maintenance** (page 339).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

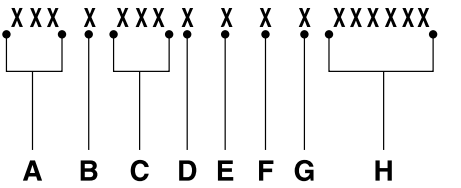
The vehicle identification number is located on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



E142476

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.

The Vehicle Identification Number contains the following information:

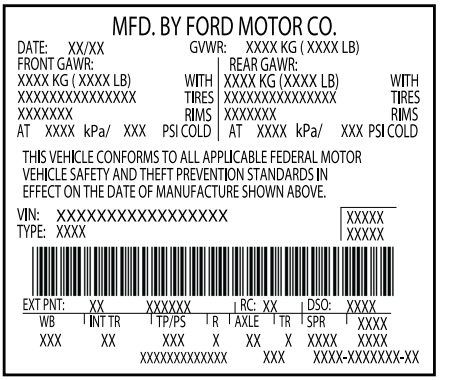


E142477

A	World manufacturer identifier
B	Brake system, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, Restraint Devices and their locations
C	Make, vehicle line, series, body type
D	Engine type
E	Check digit
F	Model year
G	Assembly plant
H	Production sequence number

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

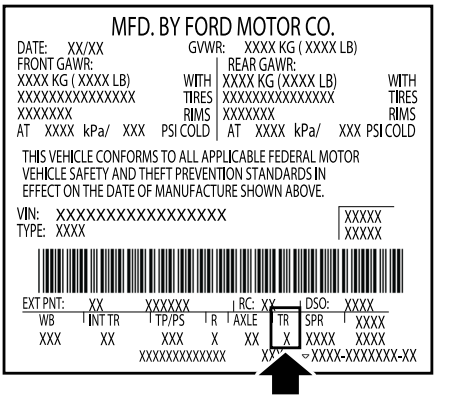
VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



E167469

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label shall be affixed to either the door hinge pillar, the door latch post, or the edge of the door near the door latch, next to the driver's seating position.

TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATION



E167814

The transmission code is on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table shows the transmission code along with the transmission description.

Description	Code
Six-speed automatic transmission (DPS6)	W
Six-speed automatic transmission (6F15)	7
Five-speed manual transmission (MTX75)	Z
Six-speed manual transmission (B6)	B
Six-speed manual transmission (MMT6)	V

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Capacities

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil	4.3 qt (4.1 L)
Engine coolant (Automatic Transmission)	6.9 qt (6.5 L)
Engine coolant (Manual Transmission)	6.2 qt (5.9 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Automatic transmission fluid[1, 2, 3]	1.9 qt (1.8 L)
Manual transmission fluid[1, 2]	1.8 qt (1.67 L)
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	12.4 gal (46.9 L)
A/C refrigerant	20.8 oz (0.59 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	7.0 fl oz (207 ml)

[1]Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

[2]Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

[3]Vehicle equipped with 6F15 Automatic transmission.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LSP12	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W20-QFS	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LFS12	WSS-M2C945-A
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted CVC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake fluid: Motorcraft DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic transmission fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid XT-10-QLVC	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Automatic transmission fluid (Canada): Motorcraft MERCON LV Automatic Transmission Fluid CXT-10-LV12	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON LV
Manual transmission fluid: Motorcraft Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid XT-11-QDC	WSS-M2C200-D2

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Name	Specification
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 2.0L

Capacities

WARNING

The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant R-134a under high pressure. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury. Have the air conditioning refrigerant system serviced only by qualified personnel.

Item	Capacity
Engine oil	4.5 qt (4.3 L)
Engine coolant	8.5 qt (8 L)
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on brake fluid reservoir
Automatic transmission fluid[1, 2, 3]	1.9 qt (1.8 L)

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Item	Capacity
Manual transmission fluid[1, 2]	1.9 qt (1.8 L)
Windshield washer fluid	Fill as required
Fuel tank	12.4 gal (46.9 L)
A/C refrigerant	20.8 oz (0.59 kg)
A/C refrigerant compressor oil	7.0 fl oz (207 ml)

[1]Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

[2]Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

[3]Vehicle equipped with DPS6 Automatic transmission.

Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Recommended motor oil (U.S.): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil XO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LSP12	WSS-M2C945-A
Recommended motor oil (Mexico): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil MXO-5W20-QSP	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Full Synthetic Motor Oil XO-5W20-QFS	WSS-M2C945-A
Optional motor oil (Canada): Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Synthetic Motor Oil CXO-5W20-LFS12	WSS-M2C945-A
Engine coolant (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted VC-3DIL-B	WSS-M97B44-D2
Engine coolant (Canada): Motorcraft Orange Antifreeze/Coolant Prediluted	WSS-M97B44-D2

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Name	Specification
CVC-3DIL-B	
Brake fluid: Motorcraft DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid PM-20	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic transmission fluid: Motorcraft Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid XT-11-QDC	WSS-M2C200-D2
Manual transmission fluid: Motorcraft Dual Clutch Transmission Fluid XT-11-QDC	WSS-M2C200-D2
Windshield washer fluid (U.S. and Mexico): Motorcraft Premium Windshield Wash Concentrate with Bitterant ZC-32-B2	WSS-M14P19-A
Windshield washer fluid (Canada): Motorcraft Premium Quality Windshield Washer Fluid CXC-37-(A, B, D, F)	WSS-M14P19-A
A/C refrigerant (U.S.): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant YN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Canada): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant CYN-16-R	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant (Mexico): Motorcraft R-134a Refrigerant MYN-19	WSH-M17B19-A
A/C refrigerant compressor oil: Motorcraft PAG Refrigerant Compressor Oil YN-12-D	WSH-M1C231-B
Multi-purpose grease: Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Grease Spray XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Name	Specification
Lock cylinders (U.S.): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant XL-1	--
Lock cylinders (Canada): Penetrating Fluid CXC-51-A	--
Lock cylinders (Mexico): Penetrating and Lock Lubricant MXL-1	--

If you use oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade, this may lead to:

- Component damage which is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that meet API SN requirements and display the API Certification Mark for gasoline engines. Do not use oil labeled with API SN service category unless the label also displays the API certification mark.



E142732

An oil that displays this symbol conforms to current engine, emission system and fuel economy performance standards of the International Lubricants Specification Advisory Council (ILSAC).

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Note: *Ford recommends using DOT 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid or equivalent meeting WSS-M6C65-A2. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause degraded brake performance and not meet the Ford performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Note: *Automatic transmissions that require MERCON LV transmission fluid should only use MERCON LV transmission fluid. The use of any other fluid may cause transmission damage.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

- AM: 530, 540-1700, 1710 kHz
- FM: 87.9-107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and strength	The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

CD and CD Player Information

Note: *CD units play commercially pressed 4.7 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.*

Note: *Do not insert CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. You should use a permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels on your homemade CDs. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not use any irregularly shaped discs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.*

Always handle discs by their edges only. Clean the disc with an approved CD cleaner only. Wipe it from the center of the disc toward the edge. Do not clean in a circular motion.

Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255. The maximum number of playable MP3 and WMA files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- MP3 and WMA folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 and WMA tracks on the disc (noted by the MP3 or WMA file extension) and all folders containing MP3 and WMA files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders helps with navigation through the disc files.

If you are burning your own MP3 and WMA discs, it is important to understand how the system reads the structures you create. While various files may be present (files with extensions other than MP3 and WMA), only files with the MP3 and WMA extension are played; other files are ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 and WMA disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in-vehicle system.

In track mode, the system displays and plays the structure as if it were only one level deep (all MP3 and WMA files play, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system only plays the MP3 and WMA files in the current folder.

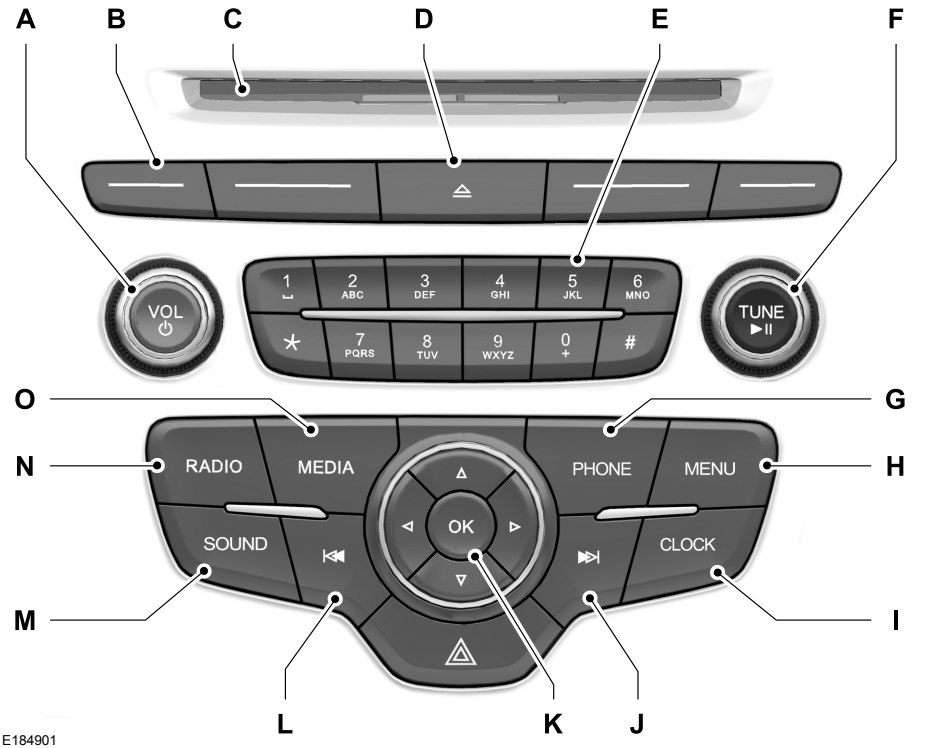
AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SYNC

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



A **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn the control to adjust the volume.

B **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

D **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, you can store your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

F **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments. Press to mute the station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track. This button also mutes the radio sources.

G **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

H **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this chapter.

I **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

J **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

K **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

L **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

M **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

N **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

O **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SATELLITE RADIO

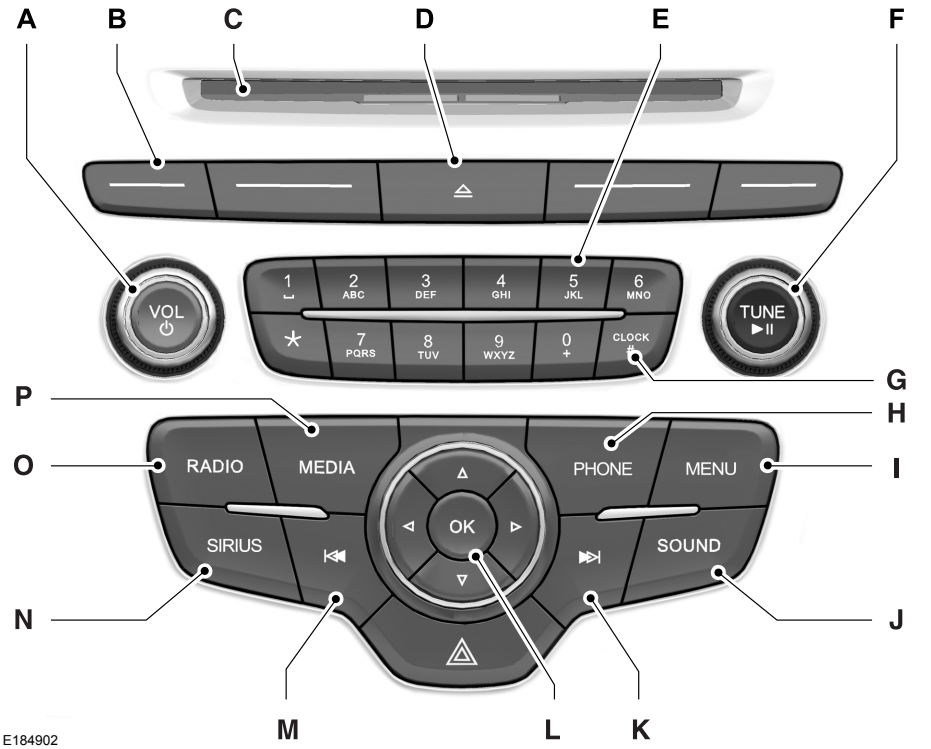
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle option package, your system may look different from what you see here.*

Note: *Some features, such as Sirius satellite radio, may not be available in your location. Check with an authorized dealer.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing



A **VOL and Power:** Press to switch the system on and off. Turn the control to adjust the volume.

B **Function buttons:** Select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode you are in (such as Radio mode or CD mode).

C **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

D **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

E **Number block:** In radio mode, store and recall your favorite radio stations. To store a radio station, tune to the station, then press and hold a preset button until sound returns. In CD mode, select a track. In phone mode, enter a phone number.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

F **TUNE and Play or Pause:** In radio mode, turn to search the frequency band in individual increments or jump to the next station of the station list. Press to mute the station. In media mode, turn to select a new track. Press to either play or pause a track. This button also mutes the radio sources.

G **CLOCK:** If not in phone mode, press to display the clock.

H **PHONE:** Press to access the phone features of the SYNC system. See your SYNC information.

I **MENU:** Press to access different audio system features. See **Menu Structure** later in this section.

J **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the various settings. When you make your selection, press the left and right arrow buttons to change the settings. Press **OK** to set or press **MENU** to exit. Sound settings can be set for each audio source independently.

K **Seek and Fast Forward:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station up the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the next available station. In CD mode, press to select the next track. Press and hold the button to move quickly forward through the current track.

L **OK and Arrow buttons:** Press **OK** to confirm menu selections. Press to scroll through the menu choices.

M **Seek and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station down the band. Press and hold the button to move quickly, then release to stop at the previous available station. In CD mode, press to select the previous track. Press and hold the button to move quickly backward through the current track.

N **SIRIUS:** Press to listen to Sirius satellite radio.

O **RADIO:** Press this multiple times to select a radio band. Press and hold to select the autostore function. Press to return to the main screen of the active radio band.

P **MEDIA:** Press to open the media source menu. You can press this multiple times to change to CD or to a SYNC-Media device or scroll through the media sources using the arrow buttons. Press **OK** to select a source.

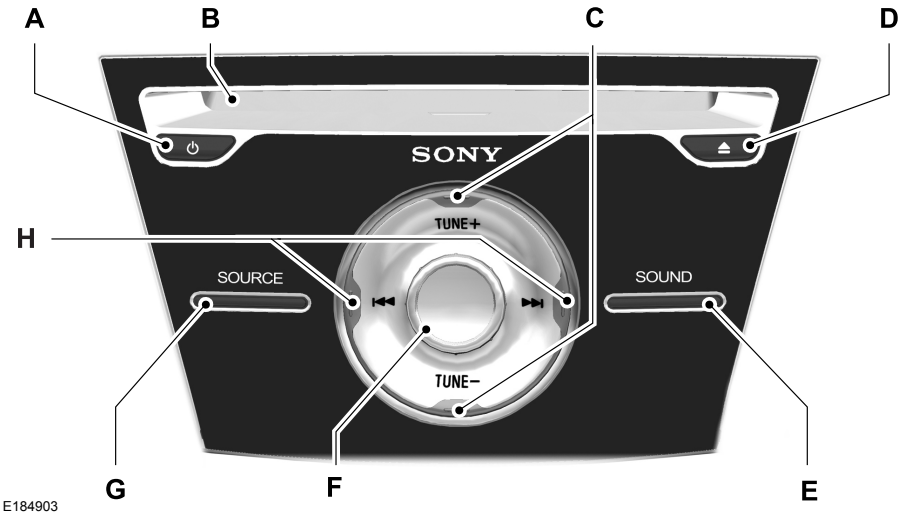
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

AUDIO UNIT - VEHICLES WITH: SONY AUDIO SYSTEM

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *The touchscreen system controls most of the audio features. See your MyFord Touch information.*



A **Power:** Press to switch the system on and off.

B **CD slot:** Insert a CD.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

C **TUNE:** In radio mode, press to manually search through the radio frequency band. In SIRIUS mode, press to find the previous or next available satellite radio station.

D **Eject:** Press to eject a CD.

E **SOUND:** Press to access settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.

F **Volume:** Turn to adjust the volume.

G **SOURCE:** Press to access different audio modes, for example AM, FM and CD.

H **Seek, Fast Forward and Reverse:** In radio mode, select a frequency band and press this button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction. In SIRIUS mode, press to select the next or previous satellite radio station. If a specific category is selected (such as jazz, rock or news), press to find the next or previous in the selected category. In CD mode, press to select the previous or next track. Press and hold to move quickly forward through the current track.

Menu Structure

Note: *Depending on your system, some options may appear slightly different.*

Press **MENU**.

Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the options.

Press the right arrow to enter a menu. Press the left arrow to exit a menu.

Press **OK** to confirm a selection.

Radio	
Manual tune	Use the left and right arrows to go up or down the frequency band.
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
AST	Select to store the six strongest local stations on the AM-AST and FM-AST frequency bands.
Set PTY Category	Select to have the system search by certain music categories (such as Rock, Pop or Country).
RBDS/RDS	Select to view additional broadcast data (radio text), if available. This feature defaults to off. RBDS must be on for you to set a category, or display radio text and station names.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

SIRIUS	
Scan	Select for a brief sampling of all available channels.
Show ESN	Select to view your satellite radio electronic serial number (ESN). You need this number when communicating with Sirius to activate, modify or track your account.
Channel Guide	Select to view available satellite radio channels. Press **OK** to open a list of the following options for this channel: Tune Channel, Skip Channel or Lock Channel. Once you skip or lock a channel, you can only access it by pressing Direct and entering the channel number. Locking or unlocking a channel requires your PIN.
Set Sirius Category	Select to view channel categories (such as Pop, Rock or News). If you select a category, seek and scan functions only stop on channels in that category.
Alerts	Select to switch on or off alerts for songs, artists or teams. The system alerts you when the selection is playing on another channel. Save up to 20 alerts.
Unlock All Stations	Use your PIN to unlock previously locked stations.
Skip No Stations	Use to restore any channels you previously skipped.
Parental Lock (PIN)	Select to create a PIN, which allows you to lock or unlock channels. Your initial PIN is 1234.

Audio Settings	
Speed Compensated Volume	Automatically adjusts the volume to compensate for speed and wind noise. You can set the system between 0 and +7.
Sound	Select to adjust settings for Treble, Midrange, Bass, Fade or Balance.
Occupancy Mode	Select to optimize sound quality for the chosen seating position.
DSP	Choose between the stereo modes.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

CD Settings	
Scan All	Select to scan all disc selections.
Scan Folder	Select to scan all music in the current MP3 folder.
CD Compression	Select to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level.

Clock Settings	
Set Time	Select to set the time.
Set Date	Select to set the calendar date.
24h Mode	Select to view clock time in a 12-hour mode or 24-hour mode.

Display Settings	
Dimming	Select to change display brightness.
Language	Select to display the language in English, French or Spanish.
Temp. Setting	Select to display the outside temperature in Fahrenheit or Celsius.

DIGITAL RADIO

Note: *HD Radio broadcasts are not available in all markets.*

HD Radio technology is the digital evolution of analog AM/FM radio. Your system has a special receiver that allows it to receive digital broadcasts (where available) in addition to the analog broadcasts, it already receives. Digital broadcasts provide a better sound quality than analog broadcasts with free, crystal-clear audio and no static or distortion. For more information, and a guide to available stations and programming, please visit www.hdradio.com.

When HD Radio is on and you tune to a station broadcasting HD Radio technology, you may notice the HD Radio logo on your screen. When this logo is available, you may also see Title and Artist fields on-screen.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

The multicast indicator appears in FM mode (only) if the current station is broadcasting multiple digital broadcasts. The highlighted numbers signify available digital channels where new or different content is available. HD1 signifies the main programming status and is available in analog and digital broadcasts. Other multicast stations (HD2 through HD7) are only available digitally.

When HD Radio broadcasts are active, you can access the following functions:

- **Scan** allows you to hear a brief sampling of all available stations. This feature still works when HD Radio reception is on, although it does not scan for HD2-HD7 channels. You may see the HD logo appear if the station has a digital broadcast.
- **Memory presets** allow you to save an active channel as a memory preset. Touch and hold a memory preset slot until the sound returns. There is a brief mute while the radio saves the station. Sound returns when finished. When switching to an HD2 or HD3 memory preset, the sound mutes before the digital audio plays, because the system has to reacquire the digital signal.

Note: *As with any saved radio station, you cannot access the saved station if your vehicle is outside the station's reception area.*

HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting

Potential reception issues	
Reception area	If you are listening to a multicast station and you are on the fringe of the reception area, the station may mute due to weak signal strength.
	If you are listening to HD1, the system switches back to the analog broadcast until the digital broadcast is available again. However, if you are listening to any of the possible HD2-HD7 multicast channels, the station mutes and stays muted unless it is able to connect to the digital signal again.
Station blending	When the system first receives a station (aside from HD2-HD7 multicast stations), it first plays the station in the analog version. Once the receiver verifies the station is an HD Radio station, it shifts to the digital version. Depending on the station quality, you may hear a slight sound change when the station changes from analog to digital. Blending is the shift from analog to digital sound or digital back to analog sound.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

In order to provide the best possible experience, use the contact form to report any station issues found while listening to a station broadcasting with HD Radio technology. Independent entities own and operate each station. These stations are responsible for ensuring all audio streams and data fields are accurate.

Potential station issues		
Issues	**Cause**	**Action**
Echo, stutter, skip or repeat in audio. Increase or decrease in audio volume.	This is poor time alignment by the radio broadcaster.	No action required. This is a broadcast issue.
Sound fading or blending in and out.	The radio is shifting between analog and digital audio.	No action required. The reception issue may clear up as you continue to drive.
There is an audio mute delay when selecting HD2 or HD3, multicast preset or **Direct Tune**.	The digital multicast is not available until the HD Radio broadcast is decoded. Once decoded, the audio is available.	No action required. This is normal behavior. Wait until the audio is available.
Cannot access HD2 or HD3 multicast channel when recalling a preset or from a direct tune.	The previously stored multicast preset or direct tune is not available in your current reception area.	No action required. The station is not available in your current location.
Text information does not match currently playing audio.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
There is no text information shown for currently selected frequency.	Data service issue by the radio broadcaster.	Fill out the station issue form at website listed below.*
HD2-HD7 stations not found when **Scan** is pressed.	Pressing **Scan** disables HD2-HD7 channel search.	No action required. This is normal behavior.

* http://www.ibiquity.com/automotive/report_radio_station_experiences

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

HD Radio Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and foreign patents. HD Radio and the HD and HD Radio logos are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp. Ford Motor Company and iBiquity Digital Corp. are not responsible for the content sent using HD Radio technology. Content may be changed, added or deleted at any time at the station owner's discretion.

SATELLITE RADIO

SIRIUS® broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Note: *This receiver includes the eCos real-time operating system. eCos is published under the eCos License.*

Satellite Radio Reception Factors

Potential satellite radio reception issues	
Antenna obstructions	For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
Station overload	When you pass a ground-based broadcast-repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and the audio system may mute.
Satellite radio signal interference	Your display may show ACQUIRING . . . to indicate the interference and the audio system may mute.

SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service

Note: *SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.*



E142593

SIRIUS satellite radio is a subscription-based satellite radio service that broadcasts a variety of music, sports, news, weather, traffic and entertainment programming. Your factory-installed SIRIUS satellite radio system includes hardware and a limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of your vehicle. See an authorized dealer for availability.

For more information on extended subscription terms (a service fee is required), the online media player and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, and other features, please visit www.siriusxm.com in the United States, www.siriusxm.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)

You need your ESN to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. When in satellite radio mode, tune to channel 0.

Troubleshooting

Message	Condition	Action
Acquiring...	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
Satellite antenna fault SIRIUS system failure	There is an internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear shortly, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See an authorized dealer for service.
Invalid Channel	The channel is no longer available.	Tune to another channel or choose another preset.
Unsubscribed Channel	Your subscription does not include this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to subscribe to the channel, or tune to another channel.
No Signal	The signal is lost from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to your vehicle antenna.	The signal is blocked. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Updating...	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

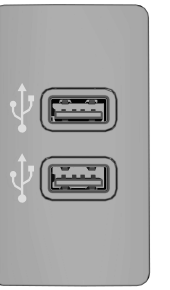
Message	Condition	Action
Questions? Call 1-888-539-7474	Your satellite service is no longer available.	Contact SIRIUS at 1-888-539-7474 to resolve subscription issues.
None found Check Channel Guide	All the channels in the selected category are either skipped or locked.	Use the channel guide to turn off the Lock or Skip function on that station.
Subscription Updated	SIRIUS has updated the channels available for your vehicle.	No action required.

USB PORT


E176344

The USB port is located in the center console.

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **SYNC™** (page 297).


E211463

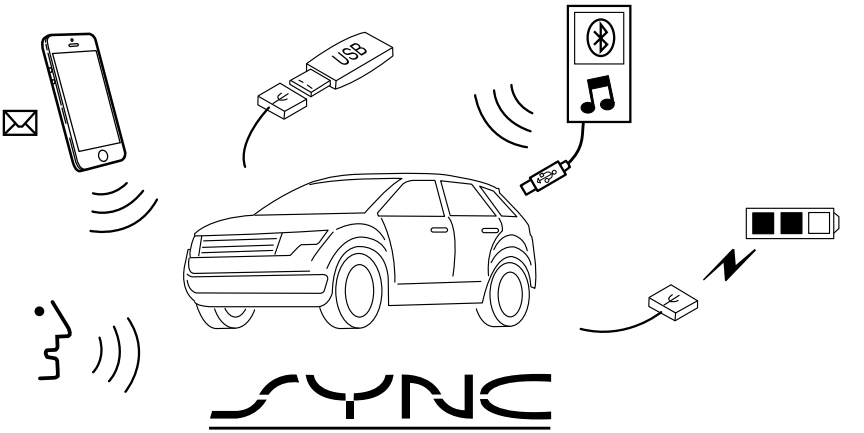
See your SYNC information.

MEDIA HUB (If Equipped)

You can locate the media hub inside the center console or on the instrument panel.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL INFORMATION



E198355

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone and portable media player. This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls.
- Access and play music from your portable music player.
- Use 911 Assist and applications, such as Spotify and Glympse, via SYNC AppLink.*
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands.
- Stream music from your connected phone.
- Text message.
- Use the advanced voice recognition system.
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

*These features are not available in all markets and may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

Support

The SYNC support team is available to help you with any questions you cannot answer on your own.

Monday-Saturday, 8:30am-9:00pm EST.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Sunday, 10:30am-7:30pm EST.

In the United States, call 1-800-392-3673.

In Canada, call 1-800-565-3673.

Times are subject to change due to holidays.

SYNC Owner Account

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software downloads available for SYNC.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.

Driving Restrictions

For your safety, certain features are speed-dependent and restricted when your vehicle is traveling over 3 mi (5 km).

Safety Information

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

Privacy Information

When a cellular phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that is linked to that cellular phone. This profile is created in order to offer you more cellular features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cellular phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and development log will remain in the vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in the vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected. If you no longer plan to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to the vehicle's SYNC module. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada. For further privacy information, see the section on 911 Assist. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 313).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is around you.

Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available voice commands appears in the display.

Global Voice Commands

These voice commands are always available. You can say them at any time.

Global voice commands	
(cancel | exit)	This command ends the voice session. You can also cancel a session by holding the voice button for two or more seconds.
help	This command provides you with hints, examples and instructions.
(main menu | start again)	This command restarts the voice session from the initial starting point.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (cancel | exit) appears you say; cancel or exit.

Helpful Hints

- Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.
- Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish, followed by a single tone. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
- Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.
- You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can cancel a voice session by pressing and holding the voice button.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance. (Recommended for first time users.)
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and guidance.

Confirmation Prompts

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request.

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then either of the following:	
confirmation prompts off	Make a best guess from the command; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarify your voice command with a short question.

Phone Confirmation

Using phone confirmations the system asks you to verify before placing any calls.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

To adjust this setting press the voice button, when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
voice settings	
Then any of the following:	
phone confirmation on	When enabled, this feature will prompt you to confirm any voice initiated call command prior to the call being placed.
phone confirmation off	The system will make a best guess; you may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.

Changing the Voice Settings

In addition to using voice commands to change the voice settings, you can also use the menu in the audio display.

To change the voice settings press the Menu button then select:

Menu Item
SYNC-Settings
Voice settings

Note: *Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed will automatically return to normal operation once the voice session ends. Fan speed can also be adjusted normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn fan knob) to increase or decrease fan speed to desired setting.*

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the climate control AC and Recirculated air buttons simultaneously, release and then increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cellular phone's functionality. At a minimum, most cellular phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual and visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

Pairing a Phone for the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your phone with SYNC allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

Note: *SYNC can support downloading up to approximately 4000 entries per Bluetooth-enabled cellular phone.*

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Using the Audio System

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates there is no paired phone, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Using Voice Commands



Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.

Press the voice and when prompted say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(pair ([Bluetooth] device | phone | Bluetooth audio) | add phone)	Follow the instructions on the audio display.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

The commands that have [ ] around the word means that the word is optional.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Depending on your phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions, such as setting the current phone as the primary phone (the phone SYNC automatically tries to connect with first upon vehicle start-up) and downloading your phonebook.

Pairing Subsequent Phones

Note: *Make sure to switch on the ignition and the radio. Shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.*

Note: *To scroll through the menus, press the up and down arrows on your audio system.*

1. Make sure to switch on your phone's Bluetooth feature before starting the search. See your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth Devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Your phone is now paired and the display indicates that the pairing was successful. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.

Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button. When prompted, say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(phone | Blackberry | iPhone)	
Then say any of the following:	
call (___)	
call ___ at home	
call ___ ((in|at) [the] office | at work)	
call ___ on (cell | mobile)	
call ___ on other	
dial [[a] number]	1
([go to] privacy | transfer to phone | privacy on)	2
(hold call [on] | place call on hold)	2
join (calls | call)	2
mute call [on]	2
(mute call off | un-mute call)	2
(turn ringer on | silent mode off)	
(turn ringer off | silent mode [on])	

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message) [3]
help

___ is a dynamic listing that should be the name of a contact in your phonebook. For example you could say "Call Home".

[1] See **Dial** table below.

[2] These commands are only valid while in a phone call.

[3] See the text message table below.

Dial Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say any of the following commands:

Voice Commands
411 (four-one-one), 911 (nine-one-one)
700 (seven hundred)
800 (eight hundred)
900 (nine hundred)
Clear (deletes all entered digits)
Delete (deletes last set of digits entered)
Number <0-9>
Plus
Pound (#)
Star (*)

Note: *To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or press any button on the audio system.*

To access text messages say:

Voice Command
[text] (messages | message)
Then say any of the following:
(listen to | read) ([text] message)
forward (text | [text] message)
reply to (text | [text] message)
call [sender]

Phonebook Hints

To hear how the SYNC system speaks a name browse phonebook, select a contact and press:

Menu Item
Hear it

Changing Devices Using Voice Commands

Using SYNC, you can easily access multiple phones, ipods, or USB devices. to switch devices say:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Command	
(connect | device) ___	You can state the name of the desired device, such as "My iPhone","My Galaxy" or"My iPod". SYNC may ask you to confirm the type of device (Phone, USB, or Bluetooth Audio).

Making Calls



Press the voice button. When prompted, say:

Voice Command	
call [[a] name]	
dial [[a] number]	SYNC prompts you to say the numbers that you wish to dial. After you say the numbers, the system confirms it. You can then say:

When the system has stated the number, you say any of the following:

Voice Command	
(dial | send)	This initiates the call.
(delete | correct)	This erases the spoken digits.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display.

Receiving Calls

Accepting calls

When receiving a call, you can answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to accept a call select:

Menu Item
Accept

Rejecting Calls

When receiving a call, you can reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or use the screen.

To use the screen to reject a call select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing.

Phone Options during an Active Call

During an active call, you have more menu features that become available, such as putting a call on hold or joining calls.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select **More** to choose from the following options:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
Mic. off	Switch your vehicle's microphone off. To switch the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cellular phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display indicates the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad (for example, numbers for passwords).
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multiparty or conference call. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the **More** option. 3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the **OK** button.
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired contact appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access your call history log. 1. Select the **More** option. 2. Scroll to the option for call history and press the **OK** button. 3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed). 4. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 5. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.

Accessing Features through the Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages, as well as access phone and system settings.

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Display	Description and action
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system's numeric keypad.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. 1. Press the **OK** button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to access an alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list. 2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts. 3. Press the **OK** button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display. 4. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Call History	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select incoming, outgoing or missed calls. Press the **OK** button to make your selection. 3. Press the **OK** button or dial button to call the selection.
Speed Dial	Select 1 of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and then press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system's numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth Device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your phone.

Text Messaging

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature.*

SYNC allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

Receiving a Text Message

Note: *This is a phone-dependent feature. Your phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Note: *This is a speed-dependent feature and is only available when your vehicle is traveling at 3.1 mph (5 km/h) or less.*

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

To hear the message you can say:

Voice command	Description and action
(listen to | read) ([text] message)	Select this option to have the system read the message to you.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Using the screen you also have the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action		
Ignore	Select this option, or do nothing, and the message goes into your text message inbox.		
View	Select the view option to open the text message. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read to you, to view other messages. For additional options select:		
	More...	If you select this option, use the arrow button to scroll through the following options:	
		Reply to sender	Press the **OK** button to access, and then scroll through a list of pre-defined messages to send.
		Call sender	Press the **OK** button to call the sender of the message.
		Forward msg.	Press the **OK** button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Select the text messaging option, and then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
New	Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and, in addition, provides the option to have the system read the message to you. To go to the next message, select the **More** option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cellular phone). The audio display indicates when the system has deleted all your text messages.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cellular phone.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Sending a Text Message

Note: *You can only send a text message to one recipient at a time.*

1. Select the send option when the desired selection highlights in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears.
3. Press the OK button again to confirm when the system asks if you want to send the message. A pre-defined signature appears on each text message.

Note: *You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.*

Accessing Your Phone Settings

These are phone-dependent features. Your phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ring tone and text message notification, modify your phonebook, and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Scroll to select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system uses the cellular phone as the master when there is more than one cellular phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all cellular phones (not only the active phone) using the Bluetooth Devices menu.
Phone status	See the cellular phone name, provider name, cellular phone number, and signal level. When done, press the left arrow buttons to return to the phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's tones or your cellular phone's). If your phone supports in-band ringing, your phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cellular phone ringtone option. 1. Press the **OK** button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone. 2. Press the **OK** button to select a ringtone.
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the **OK** button to switch the audible tone off or on.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook (such as add, delete or download). Press the **OK** button to select and scroll between the choices in the phonebook preferences table below.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Menu Item	Phonebook preferences	
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cellular phone. See your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the **OK** button to add more contacts from your phonebook.	
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the **OK** button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.	
Download now	Press the OK button to select and download your phonebook to the system.	
Auto-download	When automatic download is on, the system deletes any changes (additions or deletions) saved in the system since your last download.	
	When automatic download is off, the system does not download your phonebook when your cellular phone connects to SYNC.	
	You can only access your phonebook, call history and text messages when your paired cellular phone connects to the system. Check or uncheck this option to download your phonebook automatically each time your phone connects to the system. Download times are phone-dependent and quantity-dependent.	
Sorting Pref.	Enabling this feature allows you to select how your contacts are displayed. You can select:	
	First/Last name	Last/First name

Bluetooth Devices

The Bluetooth Devices menu allows you to add, connect and delete devices as well as set a phone as primary.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until Bluetooth Devices appears, and then press the **OK** button.

Select from the following options:

Menu Item	Description and action
Add	Pair additional phones to the system. 1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Menu Item	Description and action
	2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your phone. See your phone's manual if necessary. 3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, confirm that the PIN provided by SYNC matches the PIN displayed on your cell phone. Skip the next step. If you are prompted to enter a PIN on your device, it does not support Secure Simple Pairing. To pair, enter the PIN displayed on the screen. The display indicates when the pairing is successful. 4. When the option to set the phone as primary appears, select either yes or no. 5. SYNC may prompt you with more cell phone options. Your cell phone may also prompt you to give SYNC permission to access information. For more information on your cell phone's capability, see your cell phone's manual and visit the website.
Delete	Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device. After deleting a phone from the list, you have to repeat the pairing process to pair it again.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cellular phone each time you switch on the ignition. When you select a cellular phone as primary, it appears first in the list, marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired phone as master by selecting the master option and confirming it as the primary.
Conn.	Connect a previously connected phone. You can only have one phone connected at a time to use the phone's functionality. When you connect another phone, the previous phone disconnects from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cellular phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cellular phone. Select this option and confirm when asked. After disconnecting a phone, you can reconnect it again without repeating the full pairing process.

System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
2. Select the SYNC settings option, and then press the **OK** button.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Scroll to select from the following options:

Display	Description and action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to switch the system's Bluetooth interface off or on. Select this option, and then press the **OK** button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	Return to the factory default settings without erasing your indexed information (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices). Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored in the system (such as phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to factory default settings.
Install on SYNC	Install downloaded applications or software updates. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the **OK** button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 299).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the **OK** button and use the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrow buttons to enter or leave a folder. You can select media content for playback from this menu.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES (If Equipped)

In order for the following features to work, your cellular phone must be compatible with SYNC. To check your phone's compatibility, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

- 911 Assist: Can alert 911 in the event of an emergency.
- SYNC AppLink: Allows you to connect to and use certain applications such as Spotify and Glympse (if your phone is compatible).

These features may require activation. Available AppLink enabled apps vary by market.

911 Assist

WARNINGS

Unless the 911 Assist setting is set on before a crash, the system will not dial for help which could delay response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death after a crash.

Do not wait for 911 Assist to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid delayed response time which could increase the risk of serious injury or death after a crash. If you do not hear 911 Assist within five seconds of the crash, the system or phone may be damaged or non-functional.

Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent 911 Assist from working properly.

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.*

Note: *The SYNC 911 Assist feature only operates in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.*

Note: *Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the 911 Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.*

Note: *If any user switches 911 Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If 911 Assist is switched off, either a voice message plays or a display message or an icon comes on when your vehicle is started and after a previously paired phone connects.*

Note: *Every phone operates differently. While SYNC 911 Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.*

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable safety belts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing 911 through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the 911 Assist feature, visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca.

See **Supplementary Restraints System** (page 37). Important information about airbag deployment is in this chapter.

See **Roadside Emergencies** (page 190). Important information about the fuel pump shut-off is in this chapter.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Setting 911 Assist On or Off

Press Menu then select

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Applications	
911 Assist	Select desired option, on or off.

If you choose not to activate this feature you will have the following options:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Voice Reminder ON	Provides a display and voice reminder at phone connection at vehicle start.
Voice Reminder OFF	Provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder at phone connection.

To make sure that 911 Assist works properly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The 911 Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in the U.S., Canada or in a territory in which 911 is the emergency number.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for 911 Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC searches for and tries to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC then attempts to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial 911.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call 911, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel".

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the 911 operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all 911 systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

911 Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or 911 Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

911 Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on 911 Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to 911 Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to 911 operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist 911 operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

SYNC Mobile Apps

The system enables voice and steering wheel control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. When an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: *You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.*

Note: *iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.*

Note: *Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.*

Note: *For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.*

Availability of SYNC AppLink enabled Apps will vary by region.

Note: *Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps work automatically with no setup. Other apps want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.*

Note: *AppLink is not available if your vehicle is equipped with the MyFordTouch system.*

To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the menu on-screen. Then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll through the list of available applications and select a particular app or select:
	Find New Apps

Note: *If you cannot find a compatible SYNC AppLink app, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.*

Accessing an App's Menu

When an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button on the steering wheel control to access the app menu.

You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down.

Press the left arrow button on the steering wheel control to exit the app menu.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button then when prompted say:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The app should start. When an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app, for example "Play Playlist Road Trip".
help	Use this command to discover the available voice commands.

SYNC Mobile App Voice Commands

The following voice commands are always available:

Menu Item	Action and Description
mobile (apps | applications)	SYNC prompts you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
list [mobile] (apps | applications)	SYNC lists all of the currently available mobile apps.
find [new] [mobile] (apps | applications)	Searches your connected mobile device for SYNC-compatible mobile apps.
help	
You can say the name of a mobile app at any time to start the mobile app on SYNC.	

App Permissions

App permissions are organized by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app such as, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel economy, fuel consumption, engine speed, rain sensor, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, and head lamp status.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information such as, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine revolutions per minute, gear position, braking events, steering wheel angle, and accelerator pedal position.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state. Push notifications may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Note: *You only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.*

Note: *Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.*

Enabling and Disabling App Permissions Using the SYNC Menu

Press the MENU button to access the SYNC menu then select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
All Apps	You can also select a specific app. If the app supports push notifications, this setting is listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: *You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.*

Note: *Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.*

App Status

You can view the current status of an app in the settings menu.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

There are three possible statuses:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Update Needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-To-Date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Update settings

Menu Item	Action and Description
Request Update	Select this option from the settings menu to manually preform a needed update.
Disable Updates	Select this option from the settings menu to disable automatic updates. Doing so also disables the use of Mobile Apps on SYNC.

USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your digital music player over your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories, such as artist and album.

Note: *The system is capable of indexing up to 15,000 songs.*

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player including: iPod, Zune, plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats, such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

Confirm that the USB device has been formatted correctly and has the following specifications:

- USB 2.0.
- File format must be FAT16/32.

The format of the audio files on the USB device must be:

- MP3.
- Non DRM protected WMA.
- WAV.
- AAC.

Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port

Note: *If your digital media player has a power switch, make sure you switch it on before plugging it in.*

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

To Connect Using Voice Commands

Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice Command	Action and Description
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. See the media voice commands.

Words in brackets [ ] are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command. For example, for where (USB [stick] | iPOD | MP3 [player]) appears, you can say USB or USB stick.

To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into one of the vehicle's USB ports.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display.

To view USB content select:

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the selected source starts to playback audio automatically.

You can browse the files on the USB device in categories. Select BROWSE from the buttons at the bottom of the audio display and choose from the following:

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists

Message
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB

Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

You can say any of the voice commands that appear within open and close brackets that are separated by |. For example, where; (what's | what is) appears you say; what's or what is.

You must say any of the voice commands that appear outside of open and close brackets. For example, where; (what's | what is) playing, you must say either "what's playing" or "what is playing".

Command	Description and Action
pause	Pauses device playback.
play	Resumes device playback.
play [album] ___	
play all	Play all media on the device from the first track to the last.
play [artist] ___	
play [genre] ___	
play [playlist] ___	
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the next track on the current media.
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]	Plays the previous track on current media.
[play] (similar music | more like this)	Creates a playlist with a similar genre to the one currently playing.
play [song | track | title | file] ___	
repeat off	
repeat (one | track) [on]	Repeats the current track.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Command	Description and Action
shuffle [all] [on]	Plays the current playlist in a random order. (Not all devices support this command.)
shuffle off	
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)	At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything, such as a group, artist or song. For example you could say "Play artist The Beatles".

Examples of USB Commands

SYNC provides the user with many intuitive ways to find and play a song using voice. For example, if we have a song called "Penny Lane" from the album "Magical Mystery Tour" we can say the following to play this song:

- Play song "Penny Lane".
- Play "Penny Lane".

If we wanted to play the entire album, we can say:

- Play album "Magical Mystery Tour".
- Play "Magical Mystery Tour".

Bluetooth Audio

The system is also capable of playing music from your cellular phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth Audio on, press the MEDIA button and select:

Menu Item
BT audio

Then any of the following:

Voice Command
pause
play
next [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]
previous [track | title | song | file | podcast | chapter | episode]

Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat), find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Press the **MEDIA** button and select either USB 1 or USB 2 from the media source list in the audio display to start USB playback.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button (next to the audio display) to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist or track.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

If there are media files, you have the following options:

Display	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your device one at a time in numerical order.* Press the **OK** button to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats like ASX, M3U, WPL, or MTP).* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press the **OK** button.
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press the **OK** button.
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. The system then lists and plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press the **OK** button.
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by album.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired album, and then press the **OK** button.
Genres	Sort all indexed media files by genre (category) type.* 1. Press the **OK** button to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press the **OK** button.
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC. (Other files are not visible.) 1. Press the **OK** button to select.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Display	Description and Action
	2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on the device, and then press the **OK** button.
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

*You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the audio system's numeric keypad to jump in the list.

Using Voice Commands

You can access and view your USB songs using voice commands.

Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Press the voice button and when prompted, say any of the following commands:

Accessing and Viewing USB Media
(browse | search | show) all (album | albums)
(browse | search | show) all (artist | artists)
(browse | search | show) all (genre | genres)
(browse | search | show) all (playlist | playlists)
(browse | search | show) all (song | songs | title | titles | file | files | track | tracks)
(browse | search | show) album ___
(browse | search | show) artist ___
(browse | search | show) genre ___
(browse | search | show) playlist ___

USB 2 (If Equipped)

Your vehicle may come equipped with an additional USB port. If so, USB 1 is located at the front of the vehicle at the bottom of the instrument panel. USB 2 is located inside the storage compartment of the vehicle's center console.

You can plug in an additional USB device into the second USB port.

You can access both USB devices by using voice commands.

To access a USB device press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice command
USB 1
USB 2

Note: *SYNC only supports one connected iOS (Apple) devices at a time (whichever one you plug in first). When you connect a second iOS device, the systems charges it, but does not support playback from it.*

Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 301).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Commands for Audio Sources

Your voice system allows you to change audio sources with a simple voice command.



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Voice Command
(music | audio | entertainment) [system]
Below are a few examples of voice commands you can use.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
Bluetooth (audio | stereo)
(disc | CD [player]) play
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] FM 2
Radio
tune [to] SAT *
Sirius *
(USB [stick] | iPod | MP3 [player])
((who's | who is) this | who plays this | (what's | what is) playing [now] | (what | which) (song | track | artist) is this | (who's | who is) playing | (what's | what is) this)
help

* If equipped.

Radio Voice Commands



If you are listening to the radio, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to the radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
Radio
You can then say any of the following commands.
[tune [to]] AM
[tune [to]] AM1
[tune [to]] AM (autostore | AST | autoset)
[tune [to]] AM 2
[tune [to]] (AM ___ | ___ [AM])
[tune [to]] AM preset ___
[tune [to]] AM1 preset ___
[tune [to]] FM
[tune [to]] FM1
[tune [to]] FM (autostore | AST | autoset) preset ___

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Command
[tune [to]] FM 2
[tune [to]] (FM ___ | ___ [FM])
[tune [to]] FM preset ___
FM ___ HD ___ *
[tune [to]] FM 2 preset ___
HD ___ *
[tune [to]] preset ___
Tune
help

* If equipped.

Sirius Satellite Radio Voice Commands (If equipped)



To listen to Sirius satellite radio, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Commands
Sirius

When you are listening to Sirius satellite radio, you can press the voice button, and say any of the commands in the following table.

Voice Commands
tune [to] SAT
[tune [to]] SAT 1
[tune [to]] SAT 2
[tune [to]] SAT 3
[tune [to]] preset ___
[tune [to]] SAT 1 preset ___

Voice Commands	
[tune [to]] SAT 2 preset ___	
[tune [to]] SAT 3 preset ___	
tune [to] [Sirius]	
Help	
[tune [to]] Sirius [channel] ___	You can say the channel number (0-233) to listen to that Sirius station.

CD Voice Commands



If you are listening to a CD, press the voice button, and then say any of the commands in the following table.

If you are not listening to a CD, press the voice button and, after the tone, say:

Voice Command
(disc | CD [player]) play
You can then say any of the following commands.
pause
play
[play] next track
[play] previous track
[play | change to] track [number] ___
repeat (track | song) [on]
repeat folder [on]
repeat off
(shuffle | random | mix) [on | (tracks | songs) [on]]

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice Command
(shuffle | random | mix) (CD [player] | disc) [on]
(shuffle | random | mix) folder [on]
shuffle off

SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, see the tables below.

Use the website at any time to check your phone's compatibility, register your account and set preferences as well as access a customer representative via an online chat (during certain hours). Visit www.SYNCMyRide.com, www.SYNCMyRide.ca or www.syncmaroute.ca for more information.

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
There is excessive background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Review your phone's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again.
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.
	This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Use the SYNCmyphone feature available on the website.
The system says Phonebook Downloaded but the phonebook in SYNC is empty or missing contacts.	This may be a limitation on your phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by using the Add Contacts feature.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to the device memory. Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact. Depending upon your phone, you may have to grant SYNC permission to access your phonebook contacts. Make sure to confirm when prompted by your phone during the phonebook download.
I am having trouble connecting my phone to SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again. Try deleting your device from SYNC, deleting SYNC from your device and trying again. Check the security and auto accept and prompt always settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your phone. Update your device's firmware.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Phone issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		Turn off the Auto phone-book download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a phone-dependent feature. This may be a possible phone malfunction.	Go to the website to review your phone's compatibility. Try turning off the device, resetting the device or removing the device's battery, then trying again.

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
I am having trouble connecting my device.	This may be a possible device malfunction.	Try turning off the device, resetting the device, removing the device's battery, then trying again. Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable. Make sure you insert the USB cable correctly into the device and the USB port. Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I turn on the car.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a phone-dependent feature.	Review the device compatibility chart on the SYNC website to confirm your phone supports the Bluetooth audio streaming function.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

USB and media issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The device is not connected.	Make sure you correctly connect the device to SYNC, and that you have pressed play on your device.
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	
	The song may have copyright protection, which does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to MTP class.

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	After pressing the voice icon, wait until after the tone sounds and Listening appears before saying a command. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as listed. If you say "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title, such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	If the song titles are in all CAPS, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
		Do not use special characters in the title. The system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the Phone voice commands at the beginning of the phone section.
		Make sure you are saying the contacts exactly as they are listed. For example, if you save a contact as Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
	You may be saying the name differently than the way you saved it.	Using the SYNC phone menu, open the phonebook and scroll to the name SYNC is having trouble understanding. SYNC will read the name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation SYNC is expecting.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Voice command issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	The system works better if you list full names, such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phonebook may be very short and similar, or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters, such as 123 or ICE, as the system does not recognize them.
	Your phonebook contacts may be in CAPS.	If a contact is in CAPS, you have to spell it. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC does not find any applications.	An AppLink capable phone is not connected to SYNC.	Ensure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, ensure your phone is paired and connected to SYNC in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to SYNC's USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Ensure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Ensure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
		login on the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometime apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an "Exit' or 'Quit' option, select that then restart the app. If the app does not have that option, you can also manually "Force Close" the app by going to the phone's settings menu, selecting 'Apps.' then finding the particular app and choosing 'Force stop.' Don't forget to restart the app afterwards, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC. On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tab the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tab the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth bug on some order versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you have not turned off Bluetooth.	Reset the Bluetooth on your phone by turning it off and then turning Bluetooth back on. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

AppLink issues		
Issue	**Possible cause(s)**	**Possible solution(s)**
My iPhone phone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC.	The USB connection to SYNC may need to be reset.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Try increasing the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in SYNC's Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of bluetooth ports apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in SYNC's mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

SYNC System Reset
The SYNC system in your vehicle has System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (Such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. Release both buttons after 2-3 seconds. Please allow a few minutes for the reset to complete. After a few minutes has passed you can resume using the SYNC system.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit the online store web site:

Web Address (United States)
www.Accessories.Ford.com

Web Address (Canada)
www.Accessories.Ford.ca

Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through an authorized Ford dealer. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Ford Original Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories.

Ford Motor Company will warrant your accessory through the warranty that provides the greatest benefit:

- 24 months, unlimited mileage.
- The remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact an authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Exterior style

- Accent lights.
- Graphics.
- Hood deflector.*
- Keyless entry.
- Side window deflectors.
- Splash guards.
- Spoilers.
- Wheels.

Interior style

- All-weather floor mats.
- Cargo area protectors.
- Cargo organizers.
- Illuminated door sills.
- Interior light kit.
- Premium carpeted floor mats.
- Shift knobs.
- Sport pedals.

Lifestyle

- Ash cup and smokers packages.
- Roof racks and carriers.*

Peace of mind

- Bumper-mounted parking sensor.*
- Full vehicle covers.*
- Locking fuel plug.
- Remote start.
- Vehicle security systems.
- Wheel locks.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Footnote
*Ford Licensed Accessory. The accessory manufacturer designs, develops and therefore warrants Ford Licensed Accessories, and does not design or test these accessories to Ford Motor Company engineering requirements. Contact an authorized Ford dealer for the manufacturer's limited warranty details, and request a copy of the Ford Licensed Accessories product limited warranty from the accessory manufacturer.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle:

- Do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of radio transmitter-equipped mobile communications systems, for example, two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms. Any such equipment should comply with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulations, and an authorized dealer should install this equipment.
- An authorized dealer should install mobile communications systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any non-Ford electrical or electronic accessories or components to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PROTECT YOURSELF FROM THE RISING COST OF VEHICLE REPAIRS WITH A FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN.

EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S. Only)

More than 32 million Ford owners have discovered the powerful protection of Ford Extended Service Plan. It is the extended service plan backed by Ford Motor Company, and provides peace of mind protection beyond the New Vehicle Limited Warranty coverage.

Ford ESP Can Quickly Pay for Itself

One service bill – the cost of parts and labor – can easily exceed the price of your Ford Extended Service Plan. With Ford ESP you minimize your risk for unexpected repair bills and rising repair costs.

Up to 1,000+ Covered Vehicle Components

There are four core Extended Service Plans with different levels of coverage. Ask your authorized dealer for details.

1. PremiumCARE - Our most comprehensive coverage. With over 1,000 covered components, this plan is so complete that we generally only discuss what's not covered.
2. ExtraCARE - Covers 113 components, and includes many high-tech items.
3. BaseCARE - Covers 84 components.
4. PowertrainCARE - Covers 29 critical components.

Ford Extended Service Plan is honored by all authorized Ford dealers in the U.S., Canada and Mexico. It is the extended service plan authorized and backed by Ford Motor Company.

That means you get:

- Reliable, quality service at any Ford or Lincoln dealership
- Repairs performed by factory trained technicians, using genuine parts

Rental Car Reimbursement

1st day Rental Benefit

You take advantage of replacement transportation if your vehicle is at your authorized dealer for same day covered repairs.

Extended Rental Benefits

If your vehicle is kept overnight for covered repairs, you are eligible for rental car coverage, including bumper to bumper warranty repairs, and Field Service Actions.

Roadside Assistance

Exclusive 24/7 roadside assistance, including:

- Towing, flat-tire change and battery jump starts
- Out of fuel and lock-out assistance.
- Travel expense reimbursement for lodging, meals and rental car.
- Destination assistance for taxi, shuttle, rental car coverage and emergency transportation.

Transferable Coverage

If you sell your vehicle before your Ford Extended Service Plan coverage expires, you can transfer any remaining coverage to the new owner. Whenever you sell your vehicle, prospective buyers may have a higher degree of confidence that vehicle was properly maintained with Ford ESP, thereby improving resale value.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Avoid the Rising Cost of Properly Maintaining Your Vehicle!

Ford Extended Service Plan also offers a Premium Maintenance Plan that covers all scheduled maintenance, and selected wear items. The coverage is prepaid, so you never have to worry about affording your vehicle's maintenance. It covers regular checkups, routine inspections, preventive care and replacement of select items that require periodic attention for normal wear:

- Windshield wiper blades.
- Spark plugs.
- The clutch disc.
- Brake pads and linings.
- Shock absorbers.
- Struts.
- Engine Belts.
- Engine coolant hoses, clamps and o-rings.
- Diesel exhaust fluid replenishment.

Interest Free Finance Options Available

Take advantage of our interest free installment payment plan. Just a 10% down payment will provide you with an affordable, no interest, no fee payment program allowing you all the security and benefits Ford ESP has to offer while paying over time. You are pre-approved with no credit checks, no hassles! To learn more, call our Ford ESP specialists at 800-367-3377.

Ford ESP
P.O. Box 321067
Detroit, MI 48232

EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA ONLY)

You can get more protection for your vehicle by purchasing a Ford Extended Service Plan. Ford Extended Service Plan is the only service contract backed by Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited. Depending on the plan you purchase, Ford Extended Service Plan provides benefits such as:

- Rental reimbursement.
- Coverage for certain maintenance and wear items.
- Protection against repair costs after your New Vehicle Limited Warranty Coverage expires.
- Roadside Assistance benefits.

There are several Ford Extended Service Plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations. Each plan is tailored to fit your own driving needs, including reimbursement for towing and rental. When you purchase Ford Extended Service Plan, you receive added peace-of-mind protection throughout Canada, the United States and Mexico, provided by a network of participating authorized Ford Motor Company dealers.

Note: *Repairs performed outside of Canada, the United States and Mexico are not eligible for Ford Extended Service Plan coverage.*

This information is subject to change. For more information, visit your local Ford of Canada dealer or www.ford.ca to find the Ford Extended Service Plan that is right for you.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

GENERAL MAINTENANCE INFORMATION

Why Maintain Your Vehicle?

Carefully following the maintenance schedule helps protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance and may help to increase the value of your vehicle when you sell or trade it. Keep all receipts for completed maintenance with your vehicle.

We have established regular maintenance intervals for your vehicle based upon rigorous testing. It is important that you have your vehicle serviced at the proper times. These intervals serve two purposes; one is to maintain the reliability of your vehicle and the second is to keep your cost of owning your vehicle down.

It is your responsibility to have all scheduled maintenance performed and to make sure that the materials used meet the specifications identified in this owner's manual. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 267).

Failure to perform scheduled maintenance invalidates warranty coverage on parts affected by the lack of maintenance.

Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?

Factory-Trained Technicians

Service technicians participate in extensive factory-sponsored certification training to help them become experts on the operation of your vehicle. Ask your dealership about the training and certification their technicians have received.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft® Replacement Parts

Dealerships stock Ford, Motorcraft and Ford-authorized branded re-manufactured replacement parts. These parts meet or exceed our specifications. Parts installed at your dealership carry a nationwide 24-month or unlimited mile (kilometer) parts and labor limited warranty.

If you do not use Ford authorized parts they may not meet our specifications and depending on the part, it could affect emissions compliance.

Convenience

Many dealerships have extended evening and Saturday hours to make your service visit more convenient and they offer one stop shopping. They can perform any services that are required on your vehicle, from general maintenance to collision repairs.

Note: *Not all dealers have extended hours or body shops. Please contact your dealer for details.*

Protecting Your Investment

Maintenance is an investment that pays dividends in the form of improved reliability, durability and resale value. To maintain the proper performance of your vehicle and its emission control systems, make sure you have scheduled maintenance performed at the designated intervals.

Your vehicle is equipped with the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor system, which displays a message in the information display at the proper oil change interval. This interval may be up to one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

When the oil change message appears in the information display, it is time for an oil change. Make sure you perform the oil change within two weeks or 500 miles (800 kilometers) of the message appearing. Make sure you reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after each oil change.

If your information display resets prematurely or becomes inoperative, you should perform the oil change interval at six months or 5000 miles (8000 kilometers) from your last oil change. Never exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between oil change intervals.

Your vehicle is very sophisticated and built with multiple, complex, performance systems. Every manufacturer develops these systems using different specifications and performance features. That is why it is important to rely upon your dealership to properly diagnose and repair your vehicle.

Ford Motor Company has recommended maintenance intervals for various parts and component systems based upon engineering testing. Ford Motor Company relies upon this testing to determine the most appropriate mileage for replacement of oils and fluids to protect your vehicle at the lowest overall cost to you and recommends against maintenance schedules that deviate from the scheduled maintenance information.

We strongly recommend the use of only genuine Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized re-manufactured replacement parts engineered for your vehicle.

Additives and Chemicals

This owner's manual and the Ford Workshop Manual list the recommended additives and chemicals for your vehicle. We do not recommend using chemicals or additives not approved by us as part of your vehicle's normal maintenance. Please consult your warranty information.

Oils, Fluids and Flushing

In many cases, fluid discoloration is a normal operating characteristic and, by itself, does not necessarily indicate a concern or that the fluid needs to be changed. However, a qualified expert, such as the factory-trained technicians at your dealership, should inspect discolored fluids that also show signs of overheating or foreign material contamination immediately.

Make sure to change your vehicle's oils and fluids at the specified intervals or in conjunction with a repair. Flushing is a viable way to change fluid for many vehicle sub-systems during scheduled maintenance. It is critical that systems are flushed only with new fluid that is the same as that required to fill and operate the system or using a Ford-approved flushing chemical.

Owner Checks and Services

Make sure you perform the following basic maintenance checks and inspections every month or at six-month intervals.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Check every month
Engine oil level.
Function of all interior and exterior lights.
Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure.
Windshield washer fluid level.

Check every six months
Battery connections. Clean if necessary.
Body and door drain holes for obstructions. Clean if necessary.
Cooling system fluid level and coolant strength.
Door weatherstrips for wear. Lubricate if necessary.
Hinges, latches and outside locks for proper operation. Lubricate if necessary.
Parking brake for proper operation.
Safety belts and seat latches for wear and function.
Safety warning lamps (brake, ABS, airbag and safety belt) for operation.
Washer spray and wiper operation. Clean or replace blades as necessary.

Multi-Point Inspection

In order to keep your vehicle running right, it is important to have the systems on your vehicle checked regularly. This can help identify potential issues and prevent major problems. We recommend having the following multi-point inspection performed at every scheduled maintenance interval to help make sure your vehicle keeps running great.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Multi-Point inspection	
Accessory drive belt(s)	Hazard warning system operation
Battery performance	Horn operation
Engine air filter	Radiator, cooler, heater and air conditioning hoses
Exhaust system	Suspension components for leaks or damage
Exterior lamps operation	Steering and linkage
Fluid levels*; fill if necessary	Tires (including spare) for wear and proper pressure**
For oil and fluid leaks	Windshield for cracks, chips or pits
Half-shaft dust boots	Washer spray and wiper operation

* Brake, coolant recovery reservoir, automatic transmission and window washer

**If your vehicle is equipped with a temporary mobility kit, check the tire sealant expiration Use By date on the canister. Replace as needed.

Be sure to ask your dealership service advisor or technician about the multi-point vehicle inspection. It is a comprehensive way to perform a thorough inspection of your vehicle. Your checklist gives you immediate feedback on the overall condition of your vehicle.

NORMAL SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™

Your vehicle is equipped with an Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor that determines when you should change the engine oil based on how your vehicle is used. By using several important factors in its calculations, the monitor helps reduce the cost of owning your vehicle and reduces environmental waste at the same time.

This means you do not have to remember to change the oil on a mileage-based schedule. Your vehicle lets you know when an oil change is due by displaying a message in the information display.

The following table provides examples of vehicle use and its impact on oil change intervals. It is a guideline only. Actual oil change intervals depend on several factors and generally decrease with severity of use.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

When to expect the message prompting you to change your oil	
Interval	**Vehicle use and example**
7500-10000 miles (12000-16000 km)	**Normal**
	Normal commuting with highway driving No, or moderate, load or towing Flat to moderately hilly roads No extended idling
5000-7499 miles (8000-11999 km)	**Severe**
	Moderate to heavy load or towing Mountainous or off-road conditions Extended idling Extended hot or cold operation
3000-4999 miles (4800-7999 km)	**Extreme**
	Maximum load or towing Extreme hot or cold operation

Normal Maintenance Intervals

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display[1]
Change engine oil and filter.[2]
Rotate tires, inspect tire wear and measure tread depth.
Perform a multi-point inspection (recommended).
Inspect the automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped with a dipstick). Consult your dealer for requirements.
Inspect the brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, brake linings, hoses and parking brake.
Inspect the engine cooling system strength and hoses.
Inspect the exhaust system and heat shields.
Inspect the half-shaft boots.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

At every oil change interval as indicated by the information display[1]
Inspect steering linkage, ball joints, suspension and tie-rod ends. Lubricate if equipped with grease fittings.
Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.

[1] Do not exceed one year or 10000 miles (16000 kilometers) between service intervals.

[2]Reset the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).

Other maintenance items[1]	
Every 20000 miles (32000 km)	Replace cabin air filter.
Every 30000 miles (48000 km)	Replace engine air filter.
At 100000 miles (160000 km)	Change engine coolant.[2]
Every 100000 miles (160000 km)	Replace spark plugs.
	Inspect accessory drive belt(s).[3]
Every 150000 miles (240000 km)	Change automatic transmission fluid.
	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace accessory drive belt(s) if not replaced within the last 100000 miles (160000 km).
	Replace timing and oil pump belt (1.0L engine).

[1] Perform these maintenance items within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the last engine oil and filter change. Do not exceed the designated distance for the interval.

[2] Initial replacement at six years or 100000 miles (160000 kilometers), then every three years or 50000 miles (80000 kilometers).

[3] After initial inspection, inspect every other oil change until replaced.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

SPECIAL OPERATING CONDITIONS SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE

If you operate your vehicle **primarily** in any of the following conditions, you need to perform extra maintenance as indicated. If you operate your vehicle **occasionally** under any of these conditions, it is not necessary to perform the extra maintenance. For specific recommendations, see your dealership service advisor or technician.

Perform the services shown in the following tables when specified or within 3000 miles (4800 kilometers) of the **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message appearing in the information display.

- **Example 1**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message comes on at 28751 miles (46270 kilometers). Perform the 30000-mile (48000-kilometer) automatic transmission fluid replacement.
- **Example 2**: The **OIL CHANGE REQUIRED** message has **not** come on, but the odometer reads 30000 miles (48000 kilometers) (for example, the Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor was reset at 25000 miles [40000 kilometers]). Perform the engine air filter replacement.

Using a car-top carrier	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.
	Replace spark plugs.

Extensive idling or low-speed driving for long distances, as in heavy commercial use (such as delivery, taxi, patrol car or livery)	
As required	Change engine oil and filter as indicated by the information display and perform services listed in the Normal Scheduled Maintenance chart.
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 60000 miles (96000 km)	Replace spark plugs.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Operating in dusty or sandy conditions (such as unpaved or dusty roads)	
Inspect frequently, service as required	Replace cabin air filter.
	Replace engine air filter.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km)	Inspect the wheels and related components for abnormal noise, wear, looseness or drag.
	Rotate tires, inspect tires for wear and measure tread depth.
Every 5000 miles (8000 km) or six months	Change engine oil and filter.*
	Perform multi-point inspection.
Every 50000 miles (80000 km)	Change manual transmission fluid.

*Reset your Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor after engine oil and filter changes. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 217).

Exclusive use of E85 (flex fuel vehicles only)	
Every oil change	If ran exclusively on E85, fill the fuel tank full with regular unleaded fuel.

Exceptions

There are several exceptions to the Normal Schedule:

California Fuel Filter Replacement

If you register your vehicle in California, the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item does not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability before the completion of your vehicle's useful life. Ford Motor Company, however, urges you to have all recommended maintenance services performed at the specified intervals and to record all vehicle service.

Hot Climate Oil Change Intervals

Vehicles operating in the Middle East, North Africa, Sub-Saharan Africa or locations with similar climates using an American Petroleum Institute (API) Certified for Gasoline Engines (Certification mark) oil of SM or SN quality, the normal oil change interval is 3000 miles (5000 kilometers).

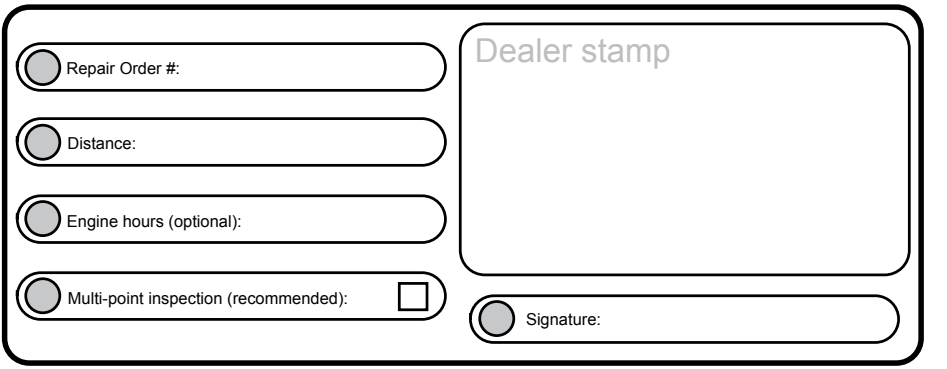
If the available API SM or SN oils are not available, then the oil change interval is 1800 miles (3000 kilometers).

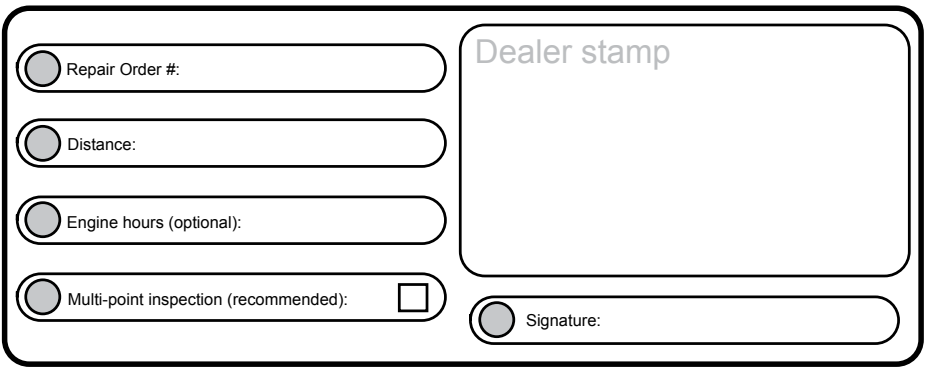
Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Engine Air Filter and Cabin Air Filter Replacement

The life of the engine air filter and cabin air filter is dependent on exposure to dusty and dirty conditions. Vehicles operated in these conditions require frequent inspection and replacement of the engine air filter and cabin air filter.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE RECORD





Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing


Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:
Repair Order #:
Distance:
Engine hours (optional):
Multi-point inspection (recommended):
Dealer stamp
Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Repair Order #:

Distance:

Engine hours (optional):

Multi-point inspection (recommended):

Dealer stamp

Signature:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You (“You” or “Your” as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (I) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA: If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS: All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control**: Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service. (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (I) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is $75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving $10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving $75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or $1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than $75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(I) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit http://www.telenav.com from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

I. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,

ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or

iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.
- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert “Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert “The Netherlands” where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a “commercial item” as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. (“FAR”) 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following “Notice of Use,” and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

NOTICE OF USE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE
CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606
This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.
© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."

"©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors ("Third Party Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.
End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: "Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministèrie de l'Equipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"
Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psma.com.au).

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFROMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2's OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2(and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6.240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the "**Suppliers**")) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

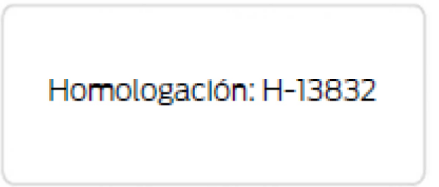
Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

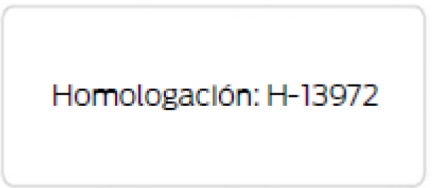
WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

TYPE APPROVALS



E207834



E207823

Canada



E207827

China



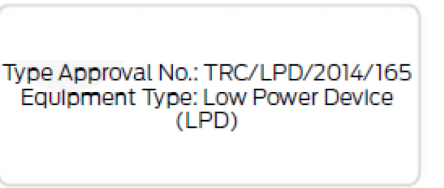
E206304

European Union



E207828

Indonesia



E207829

Jordan

RLV-COA2140373

E207833

Mexico

TA-2014/1357

Approved

E206300

South Africa

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
MR 9522 ANRT 2014
08/08/2014

E207831

Morocco

CCAB14LP4760T0

E206303

MSIP-RRM-TAL-86013500

E206301

South Korea

CCAB14LP4770T0

E206302

Taiwan

Complies with
IDA Standards
[KR586013500] Registration Number:
N3499-14
Ford Dealer License Number: DA 00461

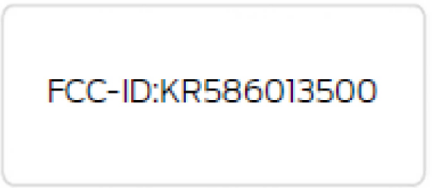
E207832

Singapore



E206305

Ukraine



E207830

United States

A

A/C
See: Climate Control....104
About This Manual....7
ABS
See: Brakes....145
ABS driving hints
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....145
Accessories....335
Exterior style....335
Interior style....335
Lifestyle....335
Peace of mind....335
Accessories
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Active Park Assist....153
Automatic Steering into Parking Space....154
Deactivating the Park Assist Feature....155
Troubleshooting the System....155
Using Active Park Assist....153
Adjusting the Headlamps....224
Horizontal Aim Adjustment....225
Vertical Aim Adjustment....224
Adjusting the Steering Wheel....70
Airbag Disposal....45
Air Conditioning
See: Climate Control....104
Air Filter
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter....233
Alarm
See: Anti-Theft Alarm....69
Ambient Lighting....80
Anti-Theft Alarm....69
Arming the Alarm....69
Disarming the Alarm....69
Appendices....357
Audible Warnings and Indicators....91
Fasten Safety Belt....91
Headlamps On Warning Chime....91
Key in Ignition Warning Chime....91
Keyless Warning Alert....91
Low Fuel Minder....91
Parking Brake On Warning Chime....91
Audio Control....70
Seek, Next or Previous....71
Audio System....281
General Information....281
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Satellite Radio....285
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: Sony Audio System....288
Menu Structure....289
Audio Unit - Vehicles With: SYNC....282
Autolamps....76
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps....76
Automatic Climate Control....105
Dual Zone Temperature Control....107
Single Zone Temperature Control....106
Temperature Control....106
Automatic High Beam Control....78
Activating the System....78
Manually Overriding the System....79
Automatic Transmission....140
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning....144
Brake-Shift Interlock....143
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow....144
SelectShift Automatic™ Transmission....142
Understanding the Positions of Your Automatic Transmission....141
Automatic Transmission Fluid Check....219
Auto-Start-Stop....127
Limitations of Use....127
Switching the System On and Off....128
Using Auto-Start-Stop with a Manual Transmission....127
Using Auto-Start-Stop with an Automatic Transmission....127
Auxiliary Power Points....117
12 Volt DC Power Point....117
Location....117

B

Battery
See: Changing the 12V Battery....221

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Blind Spot Information System.....166
Switching the System Off and On.....169
System Errors.....168
Using the System.....167
Bonnet Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....213
Booster Seats.....24
Types of Booster Seats.....24
Brake Fluid Check.....220
Brakes.....145
General Information.....145
Breaking-In.....187
Bulb Specification Chart.....231

C

Cabin Air Filter.....109
California Proposition 65.....11
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....273
Specifications.....274
Capacities and Specifications - 2.0L.....276
Specifications.....277
Capacities and Specifications.....267
Car Wash
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....236
Center Console.....118
Changing a Bulb.....226
Front Fog Lamp.....228
Headlamp.....226
LED Rear Lamps.....231
Rear Lamps - 4 Door.....229
Rear Lamps - 5 Door.....230
Replacing Licence Plate and High Mounted Brake Lamp Bulbs.....231
Changing a Fuse.....211
Fuses.....211
Changing a Road Wheel.....262
Dissimilar Spare Wheel and Tire Assembly Information.....262
Tire Change Procedure.....263
Changing the 12V Battery.....221
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....233
Changing the Wiper Blades.....222
Checking MyKey System Status.....57
MyKey Distance.....57
Number of Admin Keys.....57
Number of MyKeys.....57
Checking the Wiper Blades.....222
Child Restraint and Seatbelt Maintenance.....35
Child Restraint Positioning.....26
Child Safety.....16
General Information.....16
Child Safety Locks.....27
Left-Hand Side.....28
Right-Hand Side.....28
Cleaning Leather Seats.....239
Cleaning Products.....235
Cleaning the Engine.....237
Cleaning the Exterior.....236
Exterior Chrome Parts.....236
Exterior Plastic Parts.....236
Stripes or Graphics.....236
Underbody.....237
Under Hood.....237
Cleaning the Instrument Panel and Instrument Cluster Lens.....239
Cleaning the Interior.....238
Cleaning the Wheels.....240
Cleaning the Windows and Wiper Blades.....238
Clearing All MyKeys.....56
Climate Control.....104
Clutch Fluid Check - Manual Transmission.....220
Cold Weather Precautions.....187
Coolant Check
See: Engine Coolant Check.....218
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....44
Creating a MyKey.....55
Programming/Changing Configurable Settings.....55
Cross Traffic Alert.....169
False Alerts.....172
Switching the System Off and On.....172
System Errors.....172
System Lights, Messages and Audible Alerts.....171
System Limitations.....171
Using the System.....169
Cruise Control.....71
Principle of Operation.....160
Cruise control
See: Using Cruise Control.....160

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Customer Assistance.....195

D

Data Recording.....9
Event Data Recording.....10
Service Data Recording.....9
Daytime Running Lamps.....77
Type 1 - Conventional (Non-Configurable).....77
Type 2 - Configurable.....77
Digital Radio.....291
HD Radio Reception and Station Troubleshooting.....292
Direction Indicators.....79
Doors and Locks.....59
Drive Belt Routing - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....234
Drive Belt Routing - 2.0L.....234
Driver Alert.....161
PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION.....161
USING DRIVER ALERT.....161
Driver and Passenger Airbags.....38
Children and Airbags.....38
Proper Driver and Front Passenger Seating Adjustment.....38
Driver Knee Airbag.....42
Driving Aids.....161
Driving at High Speed.....265
Driving Hints.....187
Driving Through Water.....187
DRL
See: Daytime Running Lamps.....77

E

Eco Mode.....172
Resetting Eco Mode.....173
Type 1.....173
Economical Driving.....187
Emission Control System.....135
On-Board Diagnostics (OBD-II).....136
Readiness for Inspection and Maintenance (I/M) Testing.....137
End User License Agreement.....357
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA) 357
Engine Block Heater.....125
Using the Engine Block Heater.....126
Engine Coolant Check.....218
Adding Engine Coolant.....218
Checking the Engine Coolant.....218
Recycled Engine Coolant.....219
Severe Climates.....219
Engine Immobilizer
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....67
Engine Oil Check.....217
Adding Engine Oil.....217
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....217
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L.....217
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....267
Engine Specifications - 2.0L.....268
Environment.....15
Event Data Recording
See: Data Recording.....9
Export Unique Options.....13
Extended Service Plan (ESP).....337
EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (CANADA ONLY).....338
EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN (U.S. Only).....337
Exterior Mirrors.....83
Blind Spot Monitor.....84
Fold-Away Exterior Mirrors.....84
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....84
Integrated Blind Spot Mirrors.....84
Power Exterior Mirrors.....83

F

Fastening the Seatbelts.....30
Safety Belt Extension Assembly.....32
Safety Belt Locking Modes.....31
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....30
Floor Mats.....188
Fog Lamps - Front
See: Front Fog Lamps.....79
Ford Credit.....11
US Only.....11
Front Fog Lamps.....79
Front Parking Aid.....152
Obstacle Distance Indicator.....152
Front Passenger Sensing System.....39

Fuel and Refueling....129
Fuel Consumption....134
Calculating Fuel Economy....135
Filling the Fuel Tank....135
Fuel Filler Funnel Location....131
Fuel Filter....221
Fuel Quality - E85....130
Choosing the Right Fuel - Flex Fuel Vehicles....130
Switching Between E85 and Gasoline....131
Fuel Quality - Gasoline....130
Choosing the Right Fuel....130
Fuel Shutoff....191
Fuses....202
Fuse Specification Chart....202
Engine Compartment Fuse Box....202
Luggage Compartment Fuse Box....208
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box....206

G

Gauges....87
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge....87
Fuel Gauge....88
Information Display....87
General Information on Radio Frequencies....46
General Maintenance Information....339
Multi-Point Inspection....341
Owner Checks and Services....340
Protecting Your Investment....339
Why Maintain Your Vehicle?....339
Why Maintain Your Vehicle at Your Dealership?....339
Getting Assistance Outside the U.S. and Canada....198
Getting the Services You Need....195
Away From Home....195

H

Handbrake
See: Parking Brake....146
Hazard Warning Flashers....191
Headlamp Adjusting
See: Adjusting the Headlamps....224
Headlamp Exit Delay....77
Headlamp Removal
See: Removing a Headlamp....225
Head Restraints....111
Adjusting the Head Restraint....112
Tilting Head Restraints....113
Heated Seats....116
Heated Steering Wheel....72
Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
Heated Exterior Mirrors....109
Heated Rear Window....109
Heating
See: Climate Control....104
Hill Start Assist....146
Switching the System On and Off....147
Using Hill Start Assist....147
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate....107
Cooling the Interior Quickly....108
General Hints....107
Heating the Interior Quickly....107
Recommended Settings for Cooling....108
Recommended Settings for Heating....108
Side Window Defogging in Cold Weather....109
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes....145
Hood Lock
See: Opening and Closing the Hood....213

I

Ignition Switch....119
In California (U.S. Only)....196
Information Display Control....71
Information Displays....92
General Information....92
Information Messages....96
Airbag....96
Alarm....96
Automatic Engine Shutdown....97
Battery and Charging System....97
Blind Spot Information and Cross Traffic Alert System....97
Doors....98
Engine....98
Hill Start Assist....99
Keyless Vehicle....99
Lane Keeping Aid....99

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Lighting....100
Maintenance....100
Message Indicator....96
MyKey....100
Occupant Protection....101
Park Aid....101
Park Brake....101
Power Steering....102
Starting System....102
Start-Stop....102
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....103
Traction Control....103
Transmission....103
Installing Child Restraints....17
Child Seats....17
Using Lap and Shoulder Belts....18
Using Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH)....20
Using Tether Straps....22
Instrument Cluster....87
Instrument Lighting Dimmer....77
Interior Lamps....79
Front Interior Lamps (If Equipped)....80
Interior Luggage Compartment Release - 4-Door....65
Interior Mirror....85
Introduction....7

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle....192
Connecting the Jumper Cables....192
Jump Starting....193
Preparing Your Vehicle....192
Removing the Jumper Cables....193

K

Keyless Entry....64
SECURICODE™ KEYLESS ENTRY KEYPAD....64
Keyless Starting....119
Failure to Start....120
Fast Restart....121
Starting Your Vehicle....120
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....121
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....121
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode....120
Keys and Remote Controls....46

L

Lane Keeping System....162
Switching the System On and Off....163
Lighting Control....75
Headlamp Flasher....76
High Beams....75
Lighting....75
General Information....75
Load Carrying....175
Load Limit....175
Vehicle Loading - with and without a Trailer....175
Locking and Unlocking....59
Activating Intelligent Access....60
Autolock Feature....61
Autounlock Feature....62
Battery Saver....63
Disabled Intelligent Access Keys....61
Enabling or Disabling Autolock and Autounlock....62
Illuminated Entry....62
Illuminated Exit....62
Opening the Liftgate or Luggage Compartment....63
Power Door Locks....59
Remote Control....59
Smart Unlocks for Integrated Keyhead Transmitter....61
Smart Unlocks for Intelligent Access Keys....61
Luggage Covers....175
Removing the Cover....175
Lug Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....262
Lug Nuts....266

M

Maintenance....213
General Information....213
Manual Climate Control....104

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Manual Liftgate....63
Closing the Liftgate....64
Opening the Liftgate....64
Manual Seats....113
Manual Transmission - 5-Speed Manual Transmission (MTX-75)....138
Parking Your Vehicle....139
Recommended Shift Speeds....138
Reverse....138
Using the Clutch....138
Manual Transmission - 6-Speed Manual Transmission (MMT6)....139
Parking Your Vehicle....140
Recommended Shift Speeds....139
Reverse....140
Using the Clutch....139
Media Hub....296
Message Center
See: Information Displays....92
Mirrors
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors....109
See: Windows and Mirrors....82
Mobile Communications Equipment....13
Moonroof....85
Bounce-Back....86
Opening and Closing the Moonroof....86
Venting the Moonroof....86
Motorcraft Parts - 1.0L EcoBoost™....269
Motorcraft Parts - 2.0L....270
MyKey Troubleshooting....57
MyKey™....54
Principle of Operation....54

N

Normal Scheduled Maintenance....342
Intelligent Oil-Life Monitor™....342
Normal Maintenance Intervals....343

O

Oil Check
See: Engine Oil Check....217
Opening and Closing the Hood....213
Ordering Additional Owner's Literature....199
Obtaining a French Owner's Manual....200
Overhead Console....118

P

Parking Aids....151
Principle of Operation....151
Parking Brake....146
All Vehicles....146
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission....146
Vehicles With Manual Transmission....146
Passive Anti-Theft System....67
SecuriLock....67
PATS
See: Passive Anti-Theft System....67
Perchlorate....11
Personal Safety System™....36
How Does the Personal Safety System Work?....36
Post-Crash Alert System....194
Power Door Locks
See: Locking and Unlocking....59
Power Seats....113
Power Lumbar....114
Power Windows....82
Accessory Delay....83
Bounce-Back....82
One-Touch Down....82
One-Touch Up....82
Window Lock....82
Protecting the Environment....15

R

Rear Parking Aid....151
Rear Seats....114
Folding the Seatback....114
Rear Under Floor Storage....175
Cargo Management System....175
Rear View Camera....157
Using the Rear View Camera System....157
Rear View Camera
See: Rear View Camera....157
Rear Window Wiper and Washers....74
Rear Window Washer....74
Rear Window Wiper....74
Refueling....133
Easy Fuel™ Capless Fuel System....133

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Remote Control - Vehicles With: Integrated Key Transmitter....46
Changing the Remote Control Battery....47
Integrated Keyhead Transmitter....46
Locating Your Vehicle....47
Programming a New Remote Control....47
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function....47
Sounding the Panic Alarm....48
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry....51
Changing the Remote Control Battery....51
Intelligent Access Key....51
Locating Your Vehicle....52
Programming a New Remote Control....51
Remote Control - Vehicles With: Keyless Entry with Remote Start....48
Changing the Remote Control Battery....48
Intelligent Access Key....48
Locating Your Vehicle....49
Programming a New Remote Control....48
Remote Start....49
Sounding the Panic Alarm....49
Remote Start....110
Automatic Settings....110
Heated and Cooled Devices....110
Last Settings....110
Removing a Headlamp....225
Repairing Minor Paint Damage....240
Replacement Parts Recommendation....12
Collision Repairs....12
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs....12
Warranty on Replacement Parts....12
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control....53
Reporting Safety Defects (Canada Only)....200
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Only)....200
Roadside Assistance....190
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Getting Roadside Assistance....190
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Roadside Assistance Program Coverage....191
Vehicles Sold in Canada: Using Roadside Assistance....191
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Getting Roadside Assistance....190
Vehicles Sold in the United States: Using Roadside Assistance....190
Roadside Emergencies....190
Running-In
See: Breaking-In....187
Running Out of Fuel....131
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container....132
Filling a Portable Fuel Container....132

S

Safety Canopy™....43
Safety Precautions....129
Satellite Radio....294
Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN)....295
Satellite Radio Reception Factors....294
SIRIUS® Satellite Radio Service....294
Troubleshooting....295
Scheduled Maintenance Record....347
Scheduled Maintenance....339
Seatbelt Height Adjustment....32
Seatbelt Reminder....33
Belt-Minder™....33
Seatbelts....29
Principle of Operation....29
Seatbelt Warning Lamp and Indicator Chime....33
Conditions of operation....33
Seats....111
Security....67
Side Airbags....41
Sitting in the Correct Position....111
Snow Chains
See: Using Snow Chains....258
Special Notices....12
New Vehicle Limited Warranty....12
On Board Diagnostics Data Link Connector....13
Special Instructions....12
Special Operating Conditions Scheduled Maintenance....345
Exceptions....346
Speed Control
See: Cruise Control....160

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Stability Control....149
Principle of Operation....149
Starter Switch
See: Ignition Switch....119
Starting a Gasoline Engine....122
Automatic Engine Shutdown....123
Failure to Start....123
Guarding Against Exhaust Fumes....125
Important Ventilating Information....125
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving....124
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary....124
Vehicles with an Ignition Key....122
Vehicles with Keyless Start....122
Starting and Stopping the Engine....119
General Information....119
Steering....173
Electric Power Steering....173
Steering Wheel....70
Storage Compartments....118
Sunroof
See: Moonroof....85
Sun Visors....85
Illuminated Vanity Mirror....85
Supplementary Restraints System....37
Principle of Operation....37
Symbols Glossary....7
SYNC™ Applications and Services....313
911 Assist....313
SYNC Mobile Apps....315
SYNC™....297
General Information....297
SYNC™ Troubleshooting....327

T

Tailgate
See: Manual Liftgate....63
Technical Specifications
See: Capacities and Specifications....267
The Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line Program (U.S. Only)....197
Tire Care....243
Glossary of Tire Terminology....245
Important Information for 235/40R18 Low-Profile Tires and Wheels....243
Information About Uniform Tire Quality Grading....243
Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall....246
Temperature A B C....244
Traction AA A B C....244
Treadwear....244
Tire Pressure Monitoring System....259
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System....260
Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System....260
Tires
See: Wheels and Tires....243
Towing a Trailer....183
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 1.0L EcoBoost™, Automatic Transmission....184
Emergency Towing....184
Recreational Towing....184
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - 2.0L, Automatic Transmission....184
Emergency Towing....184
Recreational Towing....185
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission....183
Recreational Towing....183
Towing....183
Traction Control....148
Principle of Operation....148
Transmission Code Designation....272
Transmission....138
Transmission
See: Transmission....138
Transporting the Vehicle....183
Trip Computer....95
All Values....95
Average Fuel Consumption....95
Distance to Empty....95
Outside Air Temperature....95
Resetting the Trip Computer....95
Trip Odometer....95
Trip Timer....95
Type Approvals....381

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

U

Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™....215
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L....216
Unique Driving Characteristics....127
USB Port....296
Using Cruise Control....160
  Switching Cruise Control Off....160
  Switching Cruise Control On....160
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems....57
Using Snow Chains....258
Using Stability Control....150
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player....318
  Accessing Your USB Song Library....322
  Bluetooth Devices and System Settings....324
  Connecting Your Digital Media Player to the USB Port....318
  Media Menu Features....321
  Media Voice Commands....319
  USB 2....324
  Voice Commands for Audio Sources....325
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone....301
  Accessing Features through the Phone Menu....306
  Accessing Your Phone Settings....309
  Bluetooth Devices....310
  Making Calls....305
  Pairing a Phone for the First Time....302
  Pairing Subsequent Phones....303
  Phone Options during an Active Call....305
  Phone Voice Commands....303
  Receiving Calls....305
  System Settings....311
  Text Messaging....307
Using Traction Control....148
  Switching the System Off....148
  System Indicator Lights and Messages....148
  Using a Switch....148
  Using the Information Display Controls....148
Using Voice Recognition....299
  Initiating a Voice Session....299
  System Interaction and Feedback....300
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program (Canada Only)....198

V

Vehicle Care....235
  General Information....235
Vehicle Certification Label....272
Vehicle Identification Number....271
Vehicle Storage....240
  Battery....241
  Body....241
  Brakes....241
  Cooling system....241
  Engine....241
  Fuel system....241
  General....241
  Miscellaneous....242
  Removing Vehicle From Storage....242
  Tires....241
Ventilation
  See: Climate Control....104
VIN
  See: Vehicle Identification Number....271
Voice Control....71

W

Warning Lamps and Indicators....88
  Adaptive Cruise Control....88
  Anti-Lock Braking System....88
  Auto Start-stop....88
  Battery....89
  Blind Spot Monitor....89
  Brake System....89
  Cruise Control....89
  Direction Indicator....89
  Door Ajar....89
  Engine Oil....89
  Fasten Safety Belt....89
  Front Airbag....89
  Front Fog Lamps....90
  High Beam....90
  Information....90
  Lane Keeping Aid....90
  Liftgate Ajar....90
  Low Fuel Level....90
  Low Tire Pressure Warning....90

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing

Low Washer Fluid....90
Parking Lamps....90
Service Engine Soon....90
Stability Control....91
Stability Control Off....91
Washer Fluid Check....220
Washers
See: Cleaning the Exterior....236
See: Wipers and Washers....73
Waxing....237
Wheel Nuts
See: Changing a Road Wheel....262
Wheels and Tires....243
Windows and Mirrors....82
Windshield Washers....73
Windshield Wipers....73
Intermittent Wipe....73
Speed Dependent Wipers....73
Wiper Blades
See: Checking the Wiper Blades....222
Wipers and Washers....73
Wrecker Towing
See: Transporting the Vehicle....183

Focus (CDH) Canada/United States of America, GM5J-19A321-AA enUSA, Edition date: 201510, Fourth Printing